

MMENTRY TEST
GUIDE SERIES

ENGLISH

SECOND EDITION

KMU-UET-NUST-NUMS

Entry Test English MCQ's Book



A Comprehensive English Entry Test Preparation Guide

Whats New?

350 MCQ's Past Papers

1500 MCQ's Essential Practice Chapter Wise.

KEY POINTS

Essential Concepts
Detailed Review
Expeditious Revision

PAST PAPERS

KMU 2018 - 2011
UET 2018 - 2011
Answer Key & Hints
Topic wise Sorting

PRACTICE MCQ's

Essential Practice
Lesson wise
Self Assessment
Concept Testing

MM ACADEMY

LESSON NO. 01

NOUNS

KEY POINTS

Nouns

Nouns name everything around us including those that are invisible (wind, gas, vapour).

A noun in a sentence can be recognized by the word called **determiner** or an adjective that comes before it. The determiner (articles are also determiners) can be one of the following with the nouns are in bold:

Articles: the, a, an (the **duck**, a **dog**, an **egg**)

Determiner: my, some, this (my **wallet**, some **money**, this **hat**)

Descriptive adjective: red, old, beautiful (red **shirt**, old **jacket**, beautiful **shoes**)

What does a noun do in a sentence?

(1) It acts as the subject of a sentence.

The girl stepped on my toes.

(2) It acts as an object in a sentence.

Ali bit his nail.

(3) It acts as a subject complement that follows a linking verb.

My uncle is a wine taster.

(The subject complement is **a wine taster**.)

Types of nouns

• Common Noun

Common nouns are names of people, things, animals, places, and ideas, etc.

There are five types of common nouns:

Examples:

People – aunt, boy, butcher, carpenter, cousin, father, girl, lady, man, mother, tailor, woman

Things – bicycle, book, car, computer, dress, hammer, key, pencil, ship, table, vase, wallet

Animals – armadillo, baboon, bee, caterpillar, cow, dog, eagle, fish, monkey, pig, snake, turkey

Places – airport, beach, bullring, cemetery, church, country, hospital, library, mall, park, restaurant, zoo

Ideas – anger, beauty, hate, happiness, intelligence, justice, knowledge, love, peace, respect, success, trust

• Proper Noun

A **proper noun** is a name of a specific person, place, thing, animal, or organization.

Examples:

People – Ali Baba, Donald Trump, Imran Khan, Cristiano Ronaldo

Places – Downing Street, Museum of Modern Art, Sahara Desert

Things – Financial Times, Eiffel Tower,

Organization – United Nations, MM Academy, Red Brigades, Google city

Animals – King Kong, Lassie, Bugs Bunny, baboon

Day and months – Saturday, Tuesday, April, September

Singular and plural for proper nouns

We can use **the**, **a**, or **an** for a singular or plural proper noun in special cases.

Examples:

This is no longer **the London** I used to live in.

I met **a Sana** this morning who mistook me as his former neighbor.

There are **three Johns** in my class.

The khans are coming over for dinner.

There are nouns that are always plural and take a plural verb:

Jeans, pants, pajamas, shorts, tights, trousers, and underpants
Pincers, pliers, scissors, shears, tongs
Clogs, sandals, slippers, and sneakers
Glasses (spectacles), binoculars

Examples:

These trousers are not mine.

Pliers are a handy tool.

My garden **shears** trim the hedge very well.

My **glasses** are used only for reading.

A pair of can be used with the above plural nouns to make them singular and take a singular verb

Examples:

This pair of purple trousers does not match your yellow jacket.

This set of kitchen knives belongs to me.

A new pair of stainless-steel scissors is what I need.

Other nouns which are always plural:

Examples:

Clothes: My **clothes** need to be washed.

Earnings: **Earnings** in the agricultural sector **have** increased by 5% in the fourth quarter.

Cattle: **Cattle** are reared for their meat or milk.

Police: **Police** are charging him with the murder of the princess.

People: **People** in general are not very approachable. (**Peoples** when used in the plural (i.e. with '-s') refers to people from more than one race or nation, e.g. the peoples of Asia)

Nouns which are plural in form but take a singular verb

The following plural nouns are used with a singular verb as they are treated as singular: Athletics, economics, gymnastics, linguistics, mathematics, mechanics, news, numismatics, measles, mumps, physics, politics and pyrotechnics.

Examples:

Economics: **Economics** was my favorite subject at school.

News - The good **news** is that we have all been invited.

Diseases such as mumps, measles, etc.: An infectious illness, **mumps** was common among children.

Measurements and amounts that are considered as a single unit:

Examples:

One hundred years is a century.

Ten kilometers is a long distance.

Twenty dollars is not enough to buy a good shirt.

Seven days in prison is all he got for shoplifting.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns (also called **count nouns**) are nouns that can be counted (apple, orange) and can be therefore be pluralized (apples, oranges). **Uncountable nouns** (also known as **non-count** or **mass nouns**) are amounts of something, which we cannot count (gunpowder, rice).

Examples of countable nouns:

babies, cakes, dogs, fingers, gowns, huts, ideas, lies, owls, papers, pencils, suitcases

Examples of uncountable nouns:

air, ash, barley, butter, dirt, flour, money, gas, gunpowder, ice, ink, juice, luggage, oil, pepper, sand, soil, steam, sugar, vapour, water, wheat

So how do we know whether a noun is countable or uncountable?

The noun is countable:

- If we can use the indefinite article **a/an** before it.

Tom bit his **nail**.
 I am painting the **doghouse**.
 Her dog followed **her** to the park.
 Strong wind blew **their** tent down.

• Noun as indirect object

The indirect object (in bold) is a noun in a sentence. An indirect object represents a person or thing that receives the effect of the action of the verb. It usually comes between the verb and the direct object.

Examples:

He fed the **monkeys** bananas.
 The mother was cooking **her family** a seafood dinner.
 Jack sent a letter to **his parents**.
 She poured drinks for **the boys**.

• Noun as object of a preposition

The object of preposition (in bold) is a noun in a sentence. The object comes after the preposition as shown here in following examples.

Examples:

Ali broke his nose in a **fight**. (Preposition: **in**)
 Two puppies followed behind the **girl**. (Preposition: **behind**)
 Bird watching is a favourite hobby of the **villagers**. (Preposition: **of**)
 Everyone is complaining about the **boss**. (Preposition: **about**)

Singular and Plural Nouns

To make a regular noun plural, we add an **-s** or **-es** to the end (camel/camels, map/maps; echo/echoes) of the noun. plural irregular noun has a different ending (hoof/hooves) or spell differently from the singular noun (tooth/teeth).

Common endings of plural nouns:

Singular	Plural	How the plural is formed
daughter	daughters	By adding -s
Class	Classes	By adding -es to nouns ending -s
Brush	Brushes	By adding -es to nouns ending -sh
Watch	Watches	By adding -es to nouns ending -ch
Box	Boxes	By adding -es to nouns ending -x
potato	Potatoes	By adding -es to nouns ending -o
piano	Pianos	By adding -s to nouns ending -o
baby	Babies	By changing -y to -ies
Key	Keys	By adding -s to some nouns ending -y
Leaf	Leaves	By changing -f to -ves
knife	Knives	By changing -fe to -ves
Roof	Roofs	By adding -s to some nouns ending -f
Safe	Safes	By adding -s to some nouns ending -fe
tooth	Teeth	By changing vowels
Ox	Oxen	By adding -en
Child	Children	By adding -ren
Deer	Deer	Some nouns have same singular and plural

Concrete nouns are those nouns that we can perceive with the five senses; that is, we can see, smell, hear, touch and/or taste.

Countable concrete nouns: teacher (people); valley (place); deer (animal); comb (thing)

Uncountable concrete nouns: water (liquid); steam (gas); copper (substance)

• Abstract Nouns

An abstract noun is something such as a quality, a feeling, a concept, an idea, an experience, or a state, another of the intangible things that we can only think of, rather than a concrete object.

Examples

beauty, courage, danger, emotion, friendship, imagination, intelligence, and truth.
Abstract nouns, unlike concrete nouns, by themselves are singular and uncountable, but they can be pluralized in use: beauty / beauties, belief / beliefs, difficulty / difficulties, experience / experiences, friendship / friendships, weakness / weaknesses, etc.

Examples:

We couldn't say her **beauty** is beyond compare.

This small car is a little **beauty**.

We have never seen such natural **beauties** of an island.

The new recruits don't have any previous **experience** of this type of work.

It was quite an **experience** being bitten by a centipede.

He wrote a book about his **experiences** as a prisoner in a maximum-security prison.

Abstract nouns can be formed from common nouns

(boy/boyhood, child/childhood);

from verbs

(confide/confidence, know/knowledge);

from adjectives

(angry/anger, happy/happiness).

• Compound noun

A compound noun consists of at least two words, both of which are nouns or one of which must be a noun.

There are three forms of compound noun: open, closed, or hyphenated

• **Open:** The two words that made up the compound noun remain separate.

Examples: chain saw, electric kettle, invitation card, master key, nightclub singer, woodworking tool

• **Closed:** Usually two or sometimes three words joined together to form a single noun, the compound noun with no space between them.

Examples: boyfriend, houseboat, lifeboat, meatball, multimillionaire, workhorse

• **Hyphenated:** The two words that formed the compound noun are linked by a hyphen.

Examples: cover-up, drive-in, merry-go-round, mother-in-law, runner-up, well-being

Functions of a Noun

• Noun as subject of verb

The subject (in bold) can be a person, place, thing or idea. It performs an act or shows a state of being as expressed by the verb. The subject is easily recognized as it usually comes at the beginning of a sentence and is followed by a verb.

Examples:

The man stepped on my toes.

The car smashed into a wall.

Both of them fell down the stairs.

I accidentally hit my head on the bookshelf.

• Noun as direct object

The direct object (in bold) is a noun in a sentence. The object is acted upon by the subject, and it typically comes after the verb.

Examples:

Some **girls'** hair is shorter than some boys' hair.
Their **wives'** parents shook each of us warmly by the hand.
The strong winds destroyed many of the **villagers'** houses.
The **lambs'** tails are docked (= cut short) for hygiene reasons.
He had a three **weeks'** moustache growth drooping over his mouth.

Possessive noun not followed by noun

So far, all possessive nouns are followed by nouns as shown above. But if a noun (for example, a place of business) is understood, a possessive noun with its apostrophe and s is not followed by the noun.

Examples:

He went to the **barber's** to have his hair cut.
She was at the **butcher's** when I called her.

Two possessive nouns one after the other

Sometimes two possessive nouns appearing one after the other may be necessary to indicate double ownership.

Examples:

She is **Ali's brother's** girlfriend.
This is **Shiraz's father's** car.

Daud's dog's bushy tail wags furiously when she arrives home.

Apostrophe indicates joint ownership

When two nouns are joint owners of another that follows, only the second noun is in the possessive form of an apostrophe and an s.

Examples:

On that hill is **Arsalan and Faisal's** house. (The house belongs to both Arsalan and Faisal)
usman and Najeeb's mother is a doctor.

Apostrophes indicate different owners

When two nouns are owners of different assets, each of the two possessive nouns needs an apostrophe and an s.

Examples:

Daud's and Shiraz's cars are parked one behind the other. (There are two cars – one belongs to Daud while the other belongs to Shiraz.)

The police are keeping watch on the **suspect's and his accomplice's** houses.

Compound possessive nouns

If it is a hyphenated compound noun, add the apostrophe s ('s') to the last word.

Examples:

My **father-in-law's** car hit a van the other day.

If a compound noun includes a personal pronoun, all of them will have to be in the possessive form. This is done by adding the apostrophe s ('s') to the noun and making the pronoun a possessive personal pronoun.

Ali's and my school is on the other side of the river.

Take those that are **Janet's and yours**.

We will not draw any conclusion until we have looked at all the data.
Statistics is included in this year's Mathematics syllabus.

The **statistics** tell us the current trend is towards more consumers' spending.
The **enemy** is calling for a ceasefire.
The **enemy** were advised to surrender. (The plural of **enemy** is **enemies**. But **enemy**, although a singular noun, can take a plural verb such as **were** when it is regarded as a group of enemies.)

Collective noun must use correct pronoun

A collective noun treated as singular must use a singular possessive pronoun. Likewise, a plural collective noun takes a plural possessive pronoun.

Examples:

Our **team** has won **its** first trophy. (The singular possessive pronoun is **its**, and it agrees with the **singular** collective noun **team**.)

Our **team** are deciding on the strategy for **their** next game. (Plural possessive pronoun **their** agrees with the **plural** collective noun **team**.)

The full **orchestra** led by **its** new conductor is performing in the city.
The **orchestra** do not agree to the venue for **their** next performance.

The **audience** showed **its** approval by clapping and cheering.
When the curtain came down, the **audience** began leaving **their** seats.

Composite subject takes a singular verb

Two subjects can be so closely linked that they form a composite subject and expresses a single idea. A composite subject takes a singular verb.

Examples:

Time and tide waits for no man.

Bread and jam is what he eats most in the morning.

Bread and breakfast is what we will look for next.

Spaghetti and meatballs is my favourite dish.

Possessive form of nouns

Nouns have a possessive form which is used to show ownership. Such nouns are called possessive nouns. They show ownership by adding an apostrophe and an s ('s) or just an apostrophe to a noun.

Apostrophe (') and an s ('s) after singular noun to show possessive form

Place an apostrophe and an s after a singular noun to show it is the owner of the noun that follows.

Examples:

That is **Ajab Khan's** cat. (Ajab is the owner of the cat.)

The child is pulling the **cow's** tail.

Everybody's shoes must be left outside the door.

We all like the **professor's** voice.

The **plane's** tail section had broken off.

This is another failed attempt on the **President's** life.

Apostrophe (') and an s ('s) after plural noun to show possessive form

If a noun is plural and does not end in an s, add an apostrophe and an s to the end of the plural noun.

Examples:

He cut off the **mice's** tails.

I stepped on one of the **children's** toys and fell.

They are renovating the **elderly women's** home.

The **group's** latest song has topped the charts for two weeks.

Only apostrophe is added to plural noun

If a noun is plural and ends in an s, add only an apostrophe to the end of the plural noun. No s need follow the apostrophe.

I own **a** car. / I play with **an** ostrich.

- If we can use the word **many** (not **much**), **more**, or **most** to describe it.

She has **many** friends. (Not: She has **much** friends.)

- If we can express its quantity by using a number before it.

I have **five** uncles. You have **two** grandmothers.

- If it takes on singular as well as plural forms.

an owl / **some** owls / **fifty** owls

The noun is uncountable:

- If **a/an** is not normally used in front of it.

He is eating **some** rice. (Not: He is eating a rice.) Rice is an uncountable noun, so **some** (which can be used for both countable and uncountable nouns) is used with it.

- If the word **much** can be correctly used before it.

How **much** glue do we need? (Not: How many glue do we need?)

- If it is not possible for us to count it. However, we can make it countable by having a **quantity** for it.

I have just bought **two** cartons or **litres** / **liters** of milk. (Not: I have just bought two milk.)

- If it takes only a singular form.

some ice (Not: some ices) / **some** ink (Not: some inks) / **some** soup (Not: some soups)

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable. It depends on how they are used.

Examples:

There are **two** hairs on the snooker table. (Countable noun)

You think my **hair** looks nice? (Uncountable noun)

You can boil **an** egg. (Countable noun)

I like to eat **egg**. (Uncountable noun as it refers to **egg** in general, not one or two eggs.)

Let's stop for **a** coffee on our way to the library. (Countable noun)

She thinks she drinks too **much** coffee. (Uncountable noun)

Countable and Uncountable Nouns are used with the following:

Countable Noun	Uncountable Noun
a, an, a few, several, many, some,	a little, much, some,
plenty of, a lot of, a large number of	plenty of, a lot of, a large amount of, a great deal of

- **Collective Nouns**

A **collective noun** is a word that is used to refer to a number of people, animals, or things that we group together and speak of as a whole. Some examples: **a bunch of bananas**, **a herd of buffaloes** (plural of **buffalo** can also be **buffalo**), **a litter of puppies**, **a flock of sheep**, and **a package of cookies**.

The use of a collective noun in a sentence can cause difficulty as to whether it takes a singular or plural verb. It depends on how the collective noun is to be expressed – as a group performing together or individually. If members of the group are viewed as a single unit acting together, a singular verb is used. If they are regarded as separate members acting individually, a plural verb is used.

Examples:

The **family** is planning an overseas trip.

(The family is viewed as a single group planning for an overseas trip together, so it takes a singular verb.)

The **family** are discussing about the plan.

(Members of the family are looked at separately, taking part in the discussion and are not acting as a group, so a plural verb is used.)

Singular and plural collective nouns

Following are examples of collective nouns being used as singular and plural nouns.

Examples:

Data indicates that most of the offenders come from broken home.

LESSON NO. 1 EXERCISE MCQS

- Q 1) My father bought a new _____ of tools and kept it in the garage.
(a) Bunch (b) Pack
(c) Team (d) Set
- Q 2) There is a _____ of cattle grazing on the field.
(a) Group (b) Colony
(c) Herd (d) School
- Q 3) A _____ of dolphins were performing a show in the zoo.
(a) Flock (b) Colony
(c) School (d) Herd
- Q 4) Ali's father bought a _____ of mandarin oranges for the Chinese New Year.
(a) Batch (b) Hedge
(c) Bought (d) Crate
- Q 5) A _____ of soldiers are marching on the field.
(a) Troupe (b) Troop
(c) Group (d) team
- Q 6) There are a _____ of books in my living room.
(a) Bunch (b) Heap
(c) Pack (d) Library
- Q 7) The _____ of ships are heading towards the island.
(a) Flight (b) Armada
(c) School (d) crew
- Q 8) The pupils have to climb up a _____ of stairs to get to the first floor.
(a) Flight (b) Hear
(c) Row (d) fleet
- Q 9) A _____ of sailors are working on the ship.
(a) Crew (b) Staff
(c) Troop (d) Gang
- Q 10) There is a _____ of cars on the busy road.
(a) Stack (b) Troop
(c) Fleet (d) Row
- Q 11) Dorothy ordered a _____ of furniture for her new house.
(a) Bunch (b) Flight
(c) Suite (d) collection
- Q 12) Sana bought a _____ of bananas from the fruit stall.
(a) Batch (b) Stalk
(c) String (d) comb
- Q 13) The police managed to catch the _____ of robbers.
(a) Team (b) Gang
(c) Board (d) group
- Q 14) The farmer rears a _____ of chickens in his farm.
(a) School (b) Herd

- (c) Troupe (d) brood
- Q 15) The beach is crowded with a _____ of seals.
(a) Plague (b) Troop
(c) Clutch (d) rookery
- Q 16) The _____ of pearls belongs to Miss Hina.
(a) Series (b) String
(c) Chain (d) stack
- Q 17) A _____ of directors are having a meeting.
(a) Board (b) Team
(c) Group (d) Troop
- Q 18) There are a _____ of islands in Philippines.
(a) Brood (b) Bundle
(c) Group (d) crew
- Q 19) A _____ of stars are shining brightly in the sky.
(a) Galaxy (b) Gang
(c) Group (d) crowd
- Q 20) My father is holding a _____ of keys in his hand.
(a) Bundle (b) Brood
(c) Bouquet (d) bunch
- Q 21) The cabinet contains a _____ of drawers.
(a) Collection (b) Chest
(c) Boxes (d) crate
- Q 22) The clerk is arranging a _____ of files on the table.
(a) Stalk (b) Chest
(c) Group (d) Stack
- Q 23) The tailor bought a _____ of thread.
(a) Role (b) Box
(c) Spool (d) Piece
- Q 24) The farmer bought a _____ of grass for his cattle.
(a) Trut (b) Packet
(c) Bunch (d) bouquet
- Q 25) Ali bought a _____ of eggs yesterday.
(a) Jar (b) Tray
(c) Piece (d) Box

KEY FOR LESSON NO. 1

1. Set	2. Herd	3. School	4. Crate
5. Troop	6. Library	7. Armada	8. Flight
9. Crew	10. Fleet	11. Suite	12. Comb
13. Gang	14. Brood	15. Rookery	16. String
17. Board	18. Group	19. Galaxy	20. Bunch
21. Chest	22. Stack	23. Spool	24. Bunch
25. Tray			

2018

- Q 1) It's raining cats and dogs. So there are _____ cars on the road today.
- (a) Few
 - (b) a few
 - (c) a big number of
 - (d) a great deal of

ANSWER: (a)

2017

- Q 2) Naila has two _____
- (a) Sister in law
 - (b) Sisters in law
 - (c) Sister in law's
 - (d) sister's in law

ANSWER: (b)

2016

- Q 3) Choose the correct sentence:
- (a) Each contained a different specie of insect
 - (b) Each contained a different species of insect
 - (c) Each contained a different specie of insects
 - (d) Each contained a different specei of insect

ANSWER: (b)

2015

- Q 4) There are _____ fish in this pond.
- (a) many
 - (b) much
 - (c) any
 - (d) more

ANSWER: (a)

2014

- Q 5) Choose the correct sentence:
- (a) We bought some new clothing.
 - (b) We bought some new clothings.
 - (c) We bought some new piece of clothings.
 - (d) We bought some new pieces of clothings.

ANSWER: (a)

- Q 6) Choose the correct sentence:
- (a) He will reach in two hours time.
 - (b) He will reach in two hour time.
 - (c) He will reach in two hour's time.
 - (d) He will reach in two hours' time.

ANSWER: (b)

2011

- Q 7) Your _____ too long; you had better go to the hairdresser today
- (a) hair is
 - (b) hair are
 - (c) hairs are
 - (d) hairs is

HINT: "hair" is uncountable noun and takes singular verb "is."

ANSWER: (a)

Q 8) _____ in the world.

- (a) Our's is not one of the quickest response system.
- (b) Our is not one of the quickest response systems.
- (c) Ours is not one of the quickest response systems.
- (d) Our is not one of the quickest response system.

HINT: "Ours" constitutes the correct usage of a possessive case of the pronoun in this sentence.

ANSWER: (c)

He wanted to be **an MP** but was not elected for the past twelve years.

Zero Article

Articles are not always necessary.

No article is used when making generalization with plural countable nouns and singular uncountable nouns.

Examples:

Flying is far safer than driving. (Uncountable noun)

Cars are still expensive for lower-income people. (Countable noun)

Examples:

He travels to work by train.

Not: He travels to work by **a/the train**.

She loves taking photos of caterpillars.

Not: She loves taking photos of **the caterpillars**.

Zero article:

Examples:

- Before name of materials

Gold is found in Australia.

Not: **The gold** is found in Australia.

They are mining for tin.

Not: They are mining for **the tin**.

- Before abstract nouns used in a general sense

Money cannot buy happiness.

Not: Money cannot buy **the happiness**.

We always expect total honesty from our employees.

Not: We always expect **the total honesty** from our employees.

- Before proper nouns

He is a fan of Michael Jackson.

Not: He is a fan of **the Michael Jackson**.

She gave birth to twins in June.

Not: She gave birth to twins in **the June**.

- Before illness

She came down with measles and had to stay in bed.

Not: She came down with **the measles** and had to stay in bed.

Our family doctor suffers from asthma.

Not: Our family doctor suffers from **the asthma**.

- Before the name of cities, states, countries, islands, or mountains

India achieved independence in 1947.

Not: **The India** achieved independence in 1947.

Mount Everest is the world's highest mountain.

Not: **The Mount Everest** is the world's highest mountain.

Articles before Countable and Uncountable Nouns

A, an

A and **an** have the same meaning and as they both mean **one**, they are used only before a singular countable noun (a hat). We do not place either of them before a plural noun or an uncountable noun.

Examples:

He who kills animals illegally is **a poacher**.

His father works as **an accountant** in a multi-national company.

The

We use **the** before the following types of nouns:

Examples:

Singular countable noun

The serial killer has struck again.

• Before abbreviations and initials of countries
the BBC (the British Broadcasting Corporation), the EEC (the European Economic Community)
the UAR, the UK, the USA, the USSR

Indefinite Article: a, an

The indefinite articles **a** and **an** are used to introduce something that has not been mentioned before. They are not used before a plural noun.

When **a** is used before a noun, it does not refer to that one particular noun; it uses this noun as representing all the others.

A house in that new housing estate should have at least three bedrooms. (The article **a** does not point out this one house but all houses in that housing estate.).

We use **a**:

Examples:

- when we mention something for the first time

I saw **a** fairy.

- before a word which begins with a consonant

There is **a** policeman waiting for you.

- before a word with a long sound of u

a university, **a** uniform, **a** useful book, **a** European, **a** unique design

It would be **a** unique opportunity to travel in space.

- before the word one because one sounds as if it begins with a W (wun)

a one-way street, **a** one-eyed monster, **a** one-year course, **a** one-week holiday

I have **a** one-way ticket to travel from one place to another.

- The indefinite article **a** also means **one**. We can use **a** or **one** as follow:

Examples:

He keeps **a/one** dozen snakes as pets.

I have told you **a/one** hundred times to leave me alone!

- Sometimes, it is better to use **a** instead of **one**.

Examples:

She wiped up the vomit with **a** mop.

Better than: She wiped up the vomit with **one** mop.

He had **a** bath before he went to bed.

Better than: He had **one** bath before he went to bed.

- We can use **a** before a proper noun.

Examples:

A Mr Ali called to ask when you are going to give back the borrowed money.

I still remember it was on **a** December morning when I drove through the fog into a tree.

We use **an**

Examples:

- Before a noun which begins with a vowel sound

They say **an** apple a day keeps the doctor away.

- Before a singular noun (person or thing) to mean **only one** in quantity

She's **an** only child.

- Before a noun that is representative of a group, species, etc

An ostrich has only two toes on each foot.

- Before a noun that begins with a silent h

an hour, **an** honest man, **an** heir, **an** honour, **an** honourable man

It is going to close in **an** hour's time.

I can't read your writing. Is this **an** h or what?

- Before abbreviations, some of which begin with a consonant

I have **an** X-ray on my lungs.

I saw **an** UFO hovering above my kitchen.

LESSON NO. 02

ARTICLES

KEY POINTS

Articles

There are two types of articles: the **definite article (the)** and the **indefinite articles (a, an)**.

The indefinite article (a, an) is usually used first to point out a noun such as a person or thing. By doing that, it doesn't have to be clear about which particular person or thing is being referred to. When the same person or thing is mentioned again,

the definite article (the) is introduced to indicate the person or thing that has already been mentioned.

zero article. Sometimes, not any one of the articles is used.

Article a is used before nouns that begin with a consonant.

Article an is used before nouns that begin a vowel or vowel sound (an hour)

Article the is used for all nouns that have been mentioned earlier.

Articles are a kind of adjectives as they precede and modify the noun that follows them. Commonly, an article appears before a descriptive adjective that modifies a noun in a sentence as the following examples show.

Examples:

a bright moon

an easy life

the narrow road

Where an article is not used before a noun, a partitive word can be used instead. A partitive word is used to indicate that only a part of a whole is referred to.

Examples:

a slice of meat / Not: a meat

a chunk of cheese / Not: a cheese

a lump of coal / Not: a coal

a piece of scrap metal / Not: a scrap metal

Definite article: the

Identifies a definite or particular noun that has been mentioned earlier. It is not about a noun that has not been mentioned beforehand or a noun that we are unaware of.

Examples:

He watched **a movie**. **The movie** was about the death of a ghost.

(The movie mentioned in the second sentence is clear as it refers to the movie he watched.)

I saw an old man with **an eagle**. **The eagle** perched on his right shoulder.

(The second sentence is correct: **an eagle** becomes **the eagle**.)

We use the:

Examples:

- When there is only one such person, place or thing
the Pope, the President of the United States, the North Pole, the earth, the sky
- Before names of famous buildings, etc.:
the Eiffel Tower, the Great Wall of China
- Before a singular noun that refers to a whole class or group of people or things
the middle class, the homeless, the Canadians, the Hindus
- Before the special names of rivers, seas, oceans, mountain ranges, group of islands
the Nile, the Dead Sea, the Pacific Ocean, the Himalayas
- Before certain organizations, political parties, and countries
the United Nations, the Republican Party, the USSR, the UAR
- Before nouns such as places which we know of
We arrived early at **the ferry terminal** for our trip to **the island**.
We went to **the cinema**, after which we went to **the stadium** for a football match.

LESSON NO. 2 EXERCISE MCQS

LESSON NO. 2 ARTICLES

- Q 1) dog is useful animal.
 Q 2) Honest people speak truth.
 Q 3) Look at white cloud.
 Q 4) world is happy place to most people.
 Q 5) sun shines brightly.
 Q 6) Our sun is in fact star in the universe.
 Q 7) I first met him year ago.
 Q 8) It is island of great beauty.
 Q 9) To me, it is only island of great beauty.
 Q 10) Riding horse is great experience.
 Q 11) lion is king of beasts
 Q 12) Some people keep snake as pet
 Q 13) His mother told him, "You are untidy boy."
 Q 14) Look at me, I am always happy person.
 Q 15) I'll give him good news now.
 Q 16) French is language of people of France.
 Q 17) He looks as wise as owl.
 Q 18) Mekong is important river.
 Q 19) European called at my office yesterday.
 Q 20) She's never been sort of person to follow herd.
 Q 21) pilot requested clearance for emergency landing.
 Q 22) government has chartered plane to carry supplies to disaster area
 Q 23) dog got out of yard through a hole in fence.
 Q 24) It is worst disaster in history of space travel.
 Q 25) child has had unhappy home life.
 Q 26) He showed me a picture of missing girl in hope that I might recognize her.
 Q 27) class teaches young students how to use computer.
 Q 28) In ideal world there would be no need for police force.
 Q 29) With little imagination, he could visualize old house as a luxury hotel.
 Q 30) Lincoln had eerie feeling that place was haunted.
 Q 31) Plant seeds at depth of not more than ten centimeters.
 Q 32) She told us incredible story of her 134 days lost in desert.
 Q 33) Dr Dawson received invitation to speak at scientific conference.
 Q 34) In vast majority of cases disease proves fatal.
 Q 35) Their help has made big difference to team's success.
 Q 36) These findings point to country

- Q 37) with worst record on pollution. It would be doing him kindness to tell him truth.
 Q 38) other car was being driven right in middle of road.
 Q 39) board of directors wasn't convinced about accuracy of report.
 Q 40) Buy me can of beer from store, please.
 Q 41) Is that frog or toad?
 Q 42) Are you coming for drink with me?
 Q 43) Music is great source of enjoyment.
 Q 44) There wasn't soul to be seen in park..
 Q 45) This is latest news from Olympic Stadium.
 Q 46) In a rage, she tore letter to pieces.
 Q 47) Look! billboard pictured handsome man smoking cigarette.
 Q 48) factory had been built on piece of waste ground.
 Q 49) There's place on wall where paint is coming off.
 Q 50) firework display was high point of evening.

1. The/Aa	2. The	3. The
4. The....a	5. The	6. A
7. A	8. An	9. The
10. A....a	11. The....the	12. A....a
13. An	14. A	15. the
16. The....the	17. An	18. The....an
19. A	20. The....the	21. The....an
22. The....a....the	23. The....the....the	24. The....the
25. The....an	26. The....the	27. The....a
28. An....a	29. A....the	30. An....the
31. The....a	32. The....the	33. An....a
34. The....the	35. A....the	36. The....the
37. A....the	38. The....the....t he	39. The....the....the
40. A....a/the	41. A....a	42. A
43. A	44. A....the	45. The....the
46. The	47. The....a....a	48. The....a
49. A....the....th e	50. The....the....the	

Article before an uncountable noun.

The is the only article that is used before an uncountable noun. It can be anywhere in a sentence except at the end. The uncountable nouns used here are **butter, flesh, sand, snow, cream, and skin.**

Examples:

The butter melted in the heat.

The flesh of the fruit is white.

The sand was then mixed to the cement.

They are playing in **the** snow.

The sales person claimed **the** cream made **the** skin age more slowly.

We cannot use **a** before an uncountable noun, but we can if we have a measured quantity of the uncountable noun. For example, it's wrong to say or write **a cheese**. Instead, we can use **a chunk/hunk/lump/piece/slice of cheese.**

Examples:

A block of ice

A cube of sugar

A hunk of cheese

A layer of dirt

A piece of cloth

A pinch of salt

A slice of bread

Words that come before the articles.**Examples:**

Many **a** time he would talk when his mouth was full.

Half **an** orange is not enough for me.

What **an** awful lot of difference it will make to my life if I fail the exam.

All **the** puppies got stolen.

Both **the** papers had difficult and stupid questions.

MM COACHING ACADEMY
Estb - 1990

Plural countable noun

Rebel forces killed two of **the soldiers**.

Uncountable noun

The sand blown by strong wind covered the entire area.

Proper noun

The khan family you have been waiting for has arrived.

Zero Article

we use the zero article before the following types of nouns:

Examples:

Plural countable noun

Dogs bark all the time.

Most of them who spend time at this coastal resort are **tourists**.

Uncountable noun (always singular)

Rice is currently in short supply in the province.

Drug overdose caused his death.

Proper noun

Rome is a great city.

Her first language is **English**.

Same noun used with all three articles conveys different meaning:

Examples:

He is **at a school**. (We don't know which school.)

He is **at the school**. (We know which school.)

He is **at school**. (He is a teacher or student and is teaching or learning.)

I buy **the paper** every day. (Newspaper)

The professor presented **a paper** on recent findings about cancer cells. (A piece of writing)

The children are learning the art of folding **paper** into decorative objects. (Material)

It helps to observe the following:

Examples:

(1) When we use two or more adjectives to describe the same person or thing, we use the article only before the first adjective.

He talked to a tall and blonde woman.

(He talked to a [one] woman who was tall and blonde.)

(2) When we use two or more adjectives to refer to **more than one** person or thing, we use the article before each adjective.

He talked to a tall and a blonde woman.

(He talked to two women, one of whom was tall and the other was a blonde.)

Position of an article in a sentence

Each of the articles – **a**, **an**, **the** – can be used before a **countable noun**. Unlike **a** and **an**, the article **the** can come before an **uncountable noun**. The three articles are commonly used to begin a sentence. There are some words that can be used before the articles.

Articles before a countable noun.

The three articles are used here before a countable noun or before an adjective followed by a noun. The nouns used here are **goal**, **priest**, **apple**, **friend**, **fireworks**, and **building**.

Examples:

A **last-minute goal** put them through to the final. (**Last-minute** is an adjective)

A **priest** was called in to exorcise the ghost.

An **apple** a day is a must after dinner.

An **old friend** of mine was released from prison last week.

The **high-rise building** was gutted by fire.

The **bright meteor** lit up the sky.

2017

Q 9) I enjoy _____ tennis.

- (a) to play (b) plays
(c) playing (d) to playing

ANSWER: (c)

Q 10) The path _____ paved, so we were able to walk through the path.

- (a) Had been (b) Was
(c) Has been (d) Being

ANSWER: (a)

Q 11) Choose the correct sentence.

- (a) Naila was so exhausted that on she lain down for a nap.
(b) Naila was so exhausted that on she laid down for a nap.
(c) Naila was so exhausted that on she was lying down for a nap.
(d) Naila was so exhausted that on she will lay down for a nap.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 12) Choose the correct sentence.

- (a) How long are you wearing glasses?
(b) How long do you wear glasses?
(c) How long are you wear glasses?
(d) How long have you been wearing glasses?

ANSWER: (d)

Q 13) Choose the correct sentence.

- (a) The village folk were present.
(b) The village folk was present
(c) The village folks were present
(d) The village folks was present

ANSWER: (a)

Q 14) Every person must learn _____.

- (a) That how wisely his time can be used.
(b) To make wise use of his time.
(c) That his time needs a wise uses.
(d) To using his time in a wisely manner.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 15) Katherine made her children _____ chores on Sunday

- (a) Make some (d) Take some
(c) Do some (c) Does some

ANSWER: (c)

Q 16) I always _____ defy any authoritarianism

- (a) Have always will (b) Have and will
(c) Have defied and always will
(d) Haven't but will

ANSWER: (b)

2016

Q 17) As you have not prepared your work, _____.

- (a) You may not fail in the examination
(b) You could prepare harder next time
(c) You would do better in the examination

(d) You are not likely to do well this time

ANSWER: (d)

Q 18) Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) He threwed it out the window
(b) He threw it out the window
(c) He thrown it out the window
(d) He threwn it out the window

ANSWER: (b)

Q 19) He was _____ in bed all day yesterday.

- (a) Laying (b) Lying
(c) Lieing (d) Lied

ANSWER: (b)

Q 20) I eagerly look forward _____ seeing you again.

- (a) at (b) to (c) on (d) by

ANSWER: (b)

Q 21) She has let _____ her house fully furnished to a Korean couple.

- (a) out (b) at (c) up (d) in

HINT: "let out" means to give a building on rent.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 22) You can always count on me. I will not let you _____.

- (a) alone (b) down
(c) off (d) through

HINT: "let you down" means to disappoint someone

ANSWER: (b)

Q 23) Styles _____ popular in the 1960s are reappearing in high fashion boutiques.

- (a) what have been (b) which have been
(c) that have been (d) that were

HINT: "that were" is correct choice as it makes the sentence in Past Tense.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 24) Waseem _____ this him as MD for many years, but he is rather unhappy with his salary

- (a) is working in (b) is serving
(c) is working for (d) has been working

HINT: Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 25) Tahira as well as her brother _____ responsible for the loss and they must be made to make up for it:

- (a) is (b) are (c) were (d) have been

HINT: "as well as" can't make the nouns plural and that's why "is" is the correct choice.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 26) She _____ her parents. They must be worried about her health.

- (a) had better call (b) had better called

Difference between linking verb and action verb

Linking verbs are followed by adjectives which act as complements. Action verbs are followed by adverbs, which are their modifiers. Verbs that can be used as either linking verbs or action verbs include **feel, get, grow, look, prove, remain, smell, sound, stay, taste, and turn.**

Examples:

- Linking verb: Weeds **grow** wild in the untended garden.
- Action verb: He **grows** a beard.
- Linking verb: The three of us **got** seasick, so we lied down.
- Action verb: You need **to get** a job soon.
- Linking verb: The evidence will surely **prove** their guilt.
- Action verb: The alternative treatments **have proven** highly beneficial.
- Linking verb: I tried **to stay** awake through the whole movie.
- Action verb: The judge agreed **to stay** the execution.
- Linking verb: We **turned** left twice and lost our way.
- Action verb: The car **turned** the corner too fast and overturned.

Verbs is different tenses

Tense -- Verbs come in three tenses: **past, present, and future**

There are six tenses for verb. Each verb (in bold) is conjugated for the tenses as follow:

- Simple Present:** She **cycles** to school.
(The simple present tense shows an action that always happens or happens often.)
 - Simple Past:** She **cycled** to school.
(The simple past tense shows an action in the past.)
 - Simple future:** She **will cycle** to school.
(The simple future tense shows an action that happens in the future.)
 - Present continuous:** she **is cycling** to school.
(The tense shows an action that continue in the present)
 - Past continuous:** she **was cycling** to school.
(The tense shows an action that was in progress at a special time in the past)
 - Future continuous:** she **will be cycling** to school.
(The tense shows an action that will be in progress at a certain time in the future)
 - Present Perfect:** She **has cycled** to school.
(The present perfect tense shows an action that happen recently)
 - Past Perfect:** She **had cycled** to school.
(The past perfect tense shows an action that was completed at some time in the past.)
 - Future Perfect:** She **will have cycled** to school.
(The future perfect tense shows an action that will be completed at a specified time in the future.)
 - Present perfect continuous:** she **has been cycling** to school.
(The tense shows an actions that begins in the past and still continuing)
 - Past perfect continuous:** she **had been cycling** to school.
(The tense shows an action that begins in the past and continues to the specific time in the past)
 - Future perfect continuous:** she **will have been cycling** to school.
(The tense that shows an action that will have already begun and will be continuing in the future)
- Person** -- Verbs are conjugated for each of the six different persons:
first person singular: I go; second person singular: you go; third person singular: he/she/it/one goes
first person plural: we go; second person plural: you go; third person plural: they go
- Number** -- Verbs have two numbers: singular -- the dog barks; plural -- the dogs bark

LESSON NO. 03

VERBS AND TENSES

KEY POINTS

Verbs and tenses

A verb is a word or more than one word (verb phrase) that is used to express an action or a state of being of the subject.

A verb that is used in a sentence is usually an **action verb** or a **linking verb**.

There are different kinds of verbs

Verbs as a part of speech are divided into regular verbs and irregular verbs.

Regular verbs are those whose past tense and past participles are formed by adding a -d or an -ed to the end of the verb.

Irregular verbs are those verbs that do not follow the typical pattern of the regular verb in the formation of the simple past and past participle.

The verbs can also be divided into transitive verb and intransitive verb.

A transitive verb is an action verb that must have a direct object.

An intransitive verb is an action that does not have a direct object.

Examples:

Transitive verb: It is better we eat something before we go.

Intransitive verb: Our parents like to eat out on Sundays.

Transitive verb: She poked the attacker in the left eye.

Intransitive verb: He poked at a snake with a stick.

Transitive verb: They played hide-and-seek yesterday.

Intransitive verb: The children played in the park.

Transitive verb: He is too fat to touch his toes.

Intransitive verb: The sign says, "Please don't touch."

Transitive verb: When she heard what happened, she cried tears of joy.

Intransitive verb: Someone is crying loudly.

There are auxiliary verbs (also called helping verb) and main verbs.

Helping verbs are used with main verbs to create the verb tenses

The main verb expresses the main action or state of being of the subject in the sentence. The main verb is also called the lexical verb.

Examples:

I **am** sleepy. / She **is** pretty. / He **was** tall. / We **are** lost. / They **were** tired.

It **has** a long tail. / You **have** good looks. / We **had** dinner together.

I **do** it every day. / **Does** she know you? Yes, she **does**. / She **did** nothing wrong.

Modals or modal verbs are also auxiliary verbs. They are also called **modal auxiliary verbs**: can, could, will, would, may, might, shall, should, must, ought to, used to. Modal verbs are used to express **ability**, etc.

Examples:

She **can** drive a tractor. (Ability)

He **could** swim across the river. (Ability)

If we don't leave now, we **could** be late. (Possibility)

I **will** call you this evening. (Willingness)

He **may** know how to repair it. (Possibility)

You **might** like a ride in the roller coaster. (Suggestion)

She **would** like to join us. (wish)

We **must** get up early tomorrow. (Necessity)

They **should** follow the instructions. (Obligation)

LESSON NO. 3 EXERCISE ANSWERS

LESSON NO. 3 VERBS AND TENSES

1. He was taken bad in the middle of the night.
3. I carried the statue carefully in both hands.
5. She turned round, looking fierce.
7. We tried to keep him cheerful and happy.
9. The leader spoke in a somewhat impatient tone.

ANSWERS 3.1

2. My mother works hard to support the family.
4. The medical supplies were growing scarce.
6. The room was small and seemingly dusty.
8. We were getting quite quick at putting up fences.
10. All of us were overly impressed with her performance.

11. The deer are fighting.
13. Here is some work for you to do.

ANSWERS 3.2

15. The twin is born at the same time as the other.
17. There is a large amount of flour in the sack.
19. One of his brothers is getting married.

12. The natives of this island are a friendly people.
14. A pair of gloves is what they have been looking for the whole hour.
16. Is your parent home?
18. Liverpool are a great football team.
20. The rug is covered with cat hairs.

21. He was almost hit by a taxi as he was crossing the street.

ANSWER 3.3

23. John said he had not slept for forty hours.

25. It was reported that one of the kids had fallen into the river.

27. Their cat was badly bitten by a dog.

29. A Christmas message was broadcast to the nation.

31. He had a newspaper spread open on his knee.

33. His words were carefully chosen to convey the right message.

35. The men who robbed the bank are known to the police.

37. They have dug deep for buried treasure.

39. The gang had already fled when the police arrived.

22. The hotel in the distance could hardly be seen because of the haze.

24. She felt she could have wept for joy if she had heard the news earlier.

26. Maradona was forbidden from leaving the country.

28. We were all sworn to secrecy about the plan.

30. The ship had sunk without trace.

32. No one was seriously hurt in the accident.

34. Their share of the market has shrunk from 14% to 5%.

36. The pond had frozen solid.

38. His clothes were badly torn.

40. She has just come out of a coma.

ANSWER 3.4

1. Last year I went to India	2. I usually get the bus to work.	3. Next week I am going to the cinema.
4. He works.	5. She listened.	6. He leaves.
7. Simple past	8. Present continuous	9. Simple future
10. Simple present		

ANSWERS 3.5

11. Past	12. Future	13. Present	14. Past	15. Present	16. Simple past	17. Past	18. Future	19. Present	20. Future
----------	------------	-------------	----------	-------------	-----------------	----------	------------	-------------	------------

ANSWERS 3.6

21. True	22. False	23. True	24. False	25. True	26. Will	27. Did	28. Do	29. Do	30. Do
----------	-----------	----------	-----------	----------	----------	---------	--------	--------	--------

- (c) She waits. (d) She watches.
- Q. 6) Which verb is NOT in the future tense?
(a) He will go. (b) He will come.
(c) He will arrive. (d) He leaves.
- Q. 7) What tense is the verb in this sentence? 'I got home from work at 6.30pm.'
(a) present (b) past
(c) Future
- Q. 8) What tense is the verb in this sentence? 'The children are playing outside.'
(a) future (b) simple past
(c) present (d) present continuous
- Q. 9) What tense is the verb in this sentence? 'I'll take you in my car.'
(a) future (b) present
(c) past
- Q. 10) What tense is the verb in this sentence? 'They go to college on Mondays.'
(a) past (b) future
(c) simple present (d) present perfect

EXERCISE 3.5

- Q. 11) Which tense would you use for describing last year's holiday?
(a) Past (b) Present
(c) Future
- Q. 12) Which tense would you use for talking about next weekend?
(a) Past (b) Present
(c) Future
- Q. 13) Which tense would you use for talking about your daily routine?
(a) Past (b) Present
(c) Future
- Q. 14) Which tense would you use for talking about your childhood?
(a) Past (b) Present (c) Future
- Q. 15) Which tense would you use for talking about the area where you live?
(a) Past (b) Present (c) Future
- Q. 16) What is the tense of this question? Did you go to the chemist's on your way home?
(a) Past perfect (b) Past continuous
(c) simple past
- Q. 17) What is the tense of this question? Was there anybody in when you called?
(a) Past (b) Present
(c) Future Past.
- Q. 18) What is the tense of this question? Will Tom be able to mend that broken window?
(a) Past (b) Present
(c) Future
- Q. 19) What is the tense of this question? What are the shops like around here?
(a) Past (b) Present (c) Future

- Q. 20) What is the tense of this question? What will you do when this course finishes?
(a) Past (b) Present (c) Future Past.

EXERCISE 3.6

- Q. 21) 'Drove' is the past of 'drive'.
(a) True (b) False
- Q. 22) 'Felt' is the past of 'fill'.
(a) True (b) False
- Q. 23) 'Was' is the past of 'is'.
(a) True (b) False
- Q. 24) 'Shut' is the past of 'shout'.
(a) True (b) False
- Q. 25) 'Taught' is the past of 'teach'.
(a) True (b) False
- Q. 26) Which word goes in the gap? _____ you come again tomorrow?
(a) Did (b) Do (c) Will
- Q. 27) Which word goes in the gap? _____ you hear the thunder last night?
(a) Did (b) Do (c) Will
- Q. 28) Which word goes in the gap? _____ you eat meat every day?
(a) Did (b) Do (c) Will
- Q. 29) Which word goes in the gap? How many times a week _____ your family eat together these days?
(a) did (b) do (c) does
- Q. 30) Which word goes in the gap? At what time _____ the children start school in the mornings?
(a) did (b) do (c) does

(c) had better to call (d) better call
HINT: "had better" is a modal auxiliary which

LESSON NO. 3 VERBS AND TENSES

constitutes a suggestion along with an undercurrent implied threat or warning.
ANSWER: (a)

LESSON NO. 3 EXERCISE MCQS

Fill in each blank with the correct word as given in bracket.

- Q 1) He was taken _____ in the middle of the night.
(bad, badly)
- Q 2) My mother works _____ to support the family.
(hard, hardly)
- Q 3) I carried the statue _____ in both hands. (careful, carefully)
- Q 4) The medical supplies were growing _____.
(scarce, scarcely)
- Q 5) She turned round, looking _____. (fierce, fiercely)
- Q 6) The room was small and _____ dusty. (seeming, seemingly)
- Q 7) We tried to keep him _____ and happy. (cheerful, cheerfully)
- Q 8) We were getting quite _____ at putting up fences.
(quick, quickly)
- Q 9) The leader spoke in a somewhat _____ tone.
(impatient, impatiently)
- Q 10) All of us were _____ impressed with her performance. (over, overly)

EXERCISE 3.2

Fill in the blanks with (is) or (are).

- Q 11) The deer _____ fighting.
- Q 12) The natives of this island _____ a friendly people.
- Q 13) Here _____ some work for you to do.
- Q 14) A pair of gloves _____ what they have been looking for the whole hour.
- Q 15) The twin _____ born at the same time as the other.
- Q 16) _____ your parent home?
- Q 17) There _____ a large amount of flour in the sack.
- Q 18) Liverpool _____ a great football team.
- Q 19) One of his brothers _____ getting married.
- Q 20) The rug _____ covered with cat hairs.

EXERCISE 3.3

Fill in each blank with the past participle form of the irregular verb as given in bracket.

- Q 21) He was almost _____ (hit) by a taxi as he was crossing the street.
- Q 22) The hotel in the distance could hardly be _____ (see) because of the haze.
- Q 23) John said he had not _____ (sleep) for forty hours.

- Q 24) She felt she could have _____ (weep) for joy if she had heard the news earlier.
- Q 25) It was reported that one of the kids had _____ (fall) into the river.
- Q 26) Maradona was _____ (forbid) from leaving the country.
- Q 27) Their cat was badly _____ (bite) by a dog.
- Q 28) We were all _____ (swear) to secrecy about the plan.
- Q 29) A Christmas message was _____ (broadcast) to the nation.
- Q 30) The ship had _____ (sink) without trace.
- Q 31) He had a newspaper _____ (spread) open on his knee.
- Q 32) No one was seriously _____ (hurt) in the accident.
- Q 33) His words were carefully _____ (choose) to convey the right message.
- Q 34) Their share of the market has _____ (shrink) from 14% to 5%.
- Q 35) The men who robbed the bank are _____ (know) to the police.
- Q 36) The pond had _____ (freeze) solid.
- Q 37) They have _____ (dig) deep for buried treasure.
- Q 38) His clothes were badly _____ (tear).
- Q 39) The gang had already _____ (flee) when the police arrived.
- Q 40) She has just _____ (come) out of a coma.

EXERCISE 3.4

- Q. 1) Which of the sentences is correct?
(a) Last year I go to India.
(b) Last year I went to India.
(c) Last year I am going to India.
(d) Last year I will go to India.
- Q. 2) Which of the sentences is correct?
(a) I usually getting the bus to work.
(b) I usually gets the bus to work.
(c) I am usually getting the bus to work.
(d) I usually get the bus to work.
- Q. 3) Which of the sentences is correct?
(a) Next week I am going to the cinema.
(b) Next week I will going to the cinema.
(c) Next week I is going to the cinema.
(d) Next week I went to the cinema.
- Q. 4) Which verb is NOT in the past tense?
(a) He walked. (b) He went.
(c) He works. (d) He bought.
- Q. 5) Which verb is NOT in the present tense?
(a) She listened. (b) She talks.

- His arms have a few tattoos.
- Its skin is dry and rough.
- Our grandmothers were classmates.

Comparative Adjectives

Adjectives have three forms which we can use when we compare two or more nouns: positive, comparative and superlative. The positive form is used when comparing two equal persons or things, and the comparative and superlative forms when comparing two or more unequal nouns.

The positive form

When we use the positive form of adjective to make comparison, we use such expressions: **as ... as**; **not as ... as**, etc. to compare two equal things or persons.

Examples:

- My uncle is **bald**.
- My uncle is **as bald as** a cue ball.
- His head is **big**.
- His head is **as big as** my head.
- His wife is very **charming**.
- His ex-wife is **not as charming as** his wife.

The comparative form

We can also use adjectives to compare two nouns in terms of size, length, quality and others. The comparative form is used to compare two unequal persons or things. In using the comparative form of adjective to describe how one person or thing is when compared to another person or thing, we add the letters **-er** to the end of the adjective words (big - **bigger**; small - **smaller**) and the word **than** after the comparative adjective (longer **than**, taller **than**).

Examples:

- A hen's egg is **bigger than** a pigeon's egg.
- Our fingers are **longer than** our toes.
- This basketball player is **taller than** that footballer.
- She says her pet hen walks **faster than** her pet duck.
- His head is **bigger than** my head.

Not all adjectives can end with **-er** for some adjectives, we use the word **more** in front of them (careful - **more careful**; tired - **more tired**). When using the word **more**, we also use the word **than** to follow the comparative adjective (more careful **than**; more tired **than**).

Examples:

- This morning, my grandmother appeared **more cheerful than** my grandfather.
- Those little monkeys are **more active than** the old ones.
- She is **more skillful at** drawing panda bears **than** her sister.

Some words cannot be used as comparative adjectives by adding **"-er"**

Examples:

- No: foolish - foolisher / useful - usefuler
- Yes: The right words to use are **more foolish / more useful**

Do not use **"more"** and **"er"** together for an adjective when making comparison

Examples:

- No: A yard is **more longer than** a foot.
Yes: A yard is **longer than** a foot.
- No: These oranges are **much sweeter than** those.
Yes: These oranges are **sweeter than** those.

More than one comparative adjective may be used to make a comparison

Examples:

- The paperback edition of the book is **cheaper and lighter than** the hardback copy.
- Today's weather is **sunnier and warmer than** yesterday's.

The superlative form

Examples:

- dangerous chemicals
- green vegetables
- a square box
- a big house
- a tall tree
- a cold morning
- a powerful motorbike
- English language
- Mediterranean country

Adjective of quantity

An adjective of quantity tells us the **number** (how many) or **amount** (how much) of a noun.

Examples:

- He has eaten **three** apples.
- I don't have **enough** pocket money.
- They brought along **a few** sandwiches.
- There is a **little** dust on the bookshelf.
- There are **some** birds in the tree.
- We have **much** wine for the guests.
- This long, thin centipede has **many** legs.

Demonstrative adjective

There are four words that are used as demonstrative adjectives: **this, that, these, those**. We use **this** and **that** with nouns to show the nouns are singular (**this/that** computer = one computer) and **these** and **those** with nouns to show they are plural (**these/those** ants = more than one ant).

Examples:

- **This** dog had no tail.
- **That** pig has a curly tail.
- **These** trousers are now too tight for me.
- **Those** monkeys are noisy.

Demonstrative adjectives should not be confused with demonstrative pronouns. Whether they are demonstrative adjectives or demonstrative pronouns depends on how they are used in a sentence. One way to distinguish between them is that demonstrative pronouns are not used before a noun. Instead, they are used by themselves in place of a noun.

Possessive adjective

A possessive adjective, also called a possessive determiner, expresses possession of a noun by someone or something by modifying the noun. Possessive adjectives are the same as possessive pronouns. All the possessive adjectives are listed in the following table:

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	
Singular	Plural
	Our
	Your
	Their
	Their
My	Their
Your	Their
His	Their
Her	
Its	

Examples of possessive adjectives**Examples:**

- I spent **my** afternoon painting the toilet.
- This must be **your** missing pencil.

LESSON NO. 04

ADJECTIVES

KEY POINTS

Adjectives are words that describe or modify nouns (people, places, things, or animals) or pronouns. They describe the noun by telling us its size, shape, age, colour, etc.

Examples:

- It is a **rotten** egg. (Observation)
- It is a **beautiful** painting of dinosaurs. (Opinion)
- It is a **big** cat from Africa. (Size)
- It is a **rectangular** field. (Shape)
- It is an **ancient** castle. (Age)
- It is a **black** bull. (Colour)
- It is an **Indian** elephant. (Origin)
- It is a **cotton** dress. (Material)
- It is a **school** bus. (Purpose)

There are different kinds of adjectives which include the following:

Demonstrative adjectives are **this, that, these, and those**. We use them to point out specific people or things: **this, that, these, those**.

Descriptive adjectives are the most common adjectives. We use them to describe nouns.

Interrogative adjectives are words such as **what, which, and whose** that modify nouns. We use an interrogative adjective with a noun to ask a question.

Indefinite adjectives are words like **all, any, each, few, many, much, most, several, and some** that describe nouns in a general or non-specific manner.

Possessive adjectives modify nouns or noun phrases and are words such as **my, your, his, her, its, our, and their** which we use before nouns to show possession.

Identifying adjectives in a sentence

As the adjective comes immediately before a noun, its position in a sentence is usually between the following:

an article (**a, an, the**) and a noun: a **sandy** beach, an **old** church, the **vast** ocean

a demonstrative (**this, that, these, those**) and a noun: **this new** book, **that wild** horse

an amount (**all, few, most, several, some, most**) and a noun: **few unpaid** volunteers, **several bad** mistakes

Adjectives as complements

Adjectives can act as complements although not all complements are adjectives. Complements tell us what the subject is, and they come after the subject. If the complement is only one word, it is very likely to be an adjective.

Examples:

- He is **tall, dark and handsome**.
- You are **beautiful**.
- The sky was **cloudless**.
- The elephants have been **trained**.

Types of Adjectives

Descriptive adjectives

Descriptive adjectives (**careless, black, small, long, fat, English, Mediterranean, three-cornered**) are the most numerous. Remember that adjectives modify or describe nouns only and not verbs. Adjectives describe nouns that refer to action (**kind act, hard work**); state that comes after linking verbs (feel **tired**, was **excited**), or quality (**strong wind, sad story**).

The present participle adjective tells us about something or someone that causes a feeling: **amazing**.
The past participle adjective tells us how someone feels about something or someone else: **amazed**.

Present participle adjective: The **amazing** acrobatic display captivated the audience.

Past participle adjective: They stared at the magic performance in **amazed** disbelief.

How the two different endings of participial adjectives are used

Examples:

- Their **annoyed** housemate told them to lower their voices. (Verb: annoy)
- He has the **annoying habit** of picking his nose.
- The **decayed** body of a cat attracted many flies. (Verb: decay)
- The smell of **decaying** meat was nauseating.
- She made **frustrated** attempts to look for the size she wanted. (Verb: frustrate)
- It was a **frustrating** experience when none of them listened to what I said.
- We could see the **interested** look on her face. (Verb: interest)
- I must say it was a very **interesting** book.
- The **painted** picture of a dodo's egg won the first prize. (Verb: paint)
- The **painting** work has been done to a professional standard.
- The second paper is a **written** test. (Verb: write)
- She was chosen for her **writing** skill.
- The police are investigating the **burnt** car.
- A huge cloud of smoke rose from a **burning** oil tank.
- The **excited** crowd waited for the actress to arrive.
- It was an **exciting** match.
- My **frightened** grandmother related about being chased by dogs.
- Climbing that mountain was a **frightening** experience.

Modifying participial adjectives

Participial adjectives can be modified to show their intensity. To modify these adjectives, use adverbs such as **completely, extremely, fiercely, less, more, most, rather, really, so, very, etc.**

Examples:

- The police are investigating the **completely burnt** cars.
- A huge cloud of smoke rose from a **fiercely burning** oil tank.
- The **very excited** crowd waited for the actress to arrive.
- It was a **really exciting** match.
- My **rather frightened** grandmother related about her being chased by dogs.
- Climbing that mountain was an **extremely frightening** experience.

Most participial adjectives can be both attributive and predicative

Examples:

- It is a **computerized** system.
- The system is **computerized**.
- She is an **intelligent** little girl.
- The **little girl** is **intelligent**.
- This is an **exciting** new magazine.
- This **new magazine** is **exciting**.
- I could hear **irritating** snores coming from his bedroom.
- I could hear **snores that are irritating** coming from his bedroom.

Adjectives Function as Nouns

Some adjectives are used as nouns to describe groups of people. For example, when we refer to sick people, we can simply say **the sick**. The adjective takes the place of the noun and the noun that the adjective modifies is removed. Each of these adjectives must follow the definite **the**. There are **the blind, the deaf, the elderly, the famous, the homeless, the innocent, the intelligent, the jobless, the meek, the old, the poor, the politically correct, the privileged, the rich, the sick, the strong, the underprivileged, the unemployed, the weak, the wealthy, the young, etc.**

Examples:

We use the superlative adjective when we compare three or more nouns. It is formed by adding **est** to the end of the adjective or adding the word **most** in front of it. The word **the** has to precede the superlative adjective.

Examples:

- My great grandfather is **the oldest** one in the family.
- She has **the prettiest** face in the whole school.
- He talks **the loudest** in his circle of friends.
- Bozo is **the funniest** clown in the circus.
- Your sister is **the most talkative** person in class.
- It is a small chair but **the most comfortable** chair in the house.
- He was **the most injured** among the victims.

One syllable
For adjectives of one syllable, we normally add **-er** to the end of the comparative adjective (high – higher, weak – weaker) and **-est** in their superlative forms (highest, weakest).

If an adjective of one syllable ends with an **e**, just add an **r** (pale – paler; safe – safer).

If an adjective ends in a consonant, the consonant must be doubled (big – bigger; mad – madder).

Two syllables

Example of an adjective that has two syllables: **funny** has two syllables: **fun-ny**

If an adjective has two syllables and ends in **y**, drop the **y** and add **-ier** (early – earlier; happy – happier; pretty – prettier).

If an adjective has two syllables and does not end in **y**, add the word **more** before the adjective (more handsome, more helpful; more purple).

Examples:

- She felt **happier** than she had been for a long time.
- The lifts are **more helpful** to the older patients.

Three syllables

Example of a three-syllable adjective: **beautiful** has three syllables: **beau-ti-ful**.

For an adjective with three or more syllables, use the word **more** in front of the adjective to form the comparative form and the word **most** in front of the superlative form.

Examples:

- She wears heavy make-up to make herself **more beautiful**.
- The Town Clock Tower is **the most beautiful** building in the city.
- The weather was **more terrible** when it got dark.
- It must have been **the most terrible** experience for the survivors.
- Man is still **more intelligent** than the cleverest robot.
- The eldest one is **the most intelligent** of the five sisters.

Irregular adjectives

Some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

The following table shows adjectives that are not regular

as good as	better than	the best
as bad as	worse than	the worst
as little as	less than	the least
as much as	more than	the most
as many as	more than	the most
as far as	farther than	the farthest
as far as	further than	the furthest

Participial Adjectives

There is a class of adjectives that is formed from participles, both present participle (verb ending in **-ing**) and past participle (verb ending in **-ed**). Such adjectives are called **participial adjectives**.

Present participle: He is **damaging** his health by smoking excessively.

Past participle: He has **damaged** his health through excessive smoking.

Present participle used as adjective: Excessive smoking has a **damaging** effect on his health.

Past participle used as adjective: His **damaged** health is caused by excessive smoking.

EXERCISE 4.1

Use an appropriate word in the bracket to complete the sentence.

- Q. 1) She has only (a few, a little) nuts to feed the monkeys.
Q. 2) She doesn't like answering so (much, many) stupid questions.
Q. 3) The stray dog wagged its tail when given a (little, few) food to eat.
Q. 4) (Few, some) students had knowledge of classical music.
Q. 5) We need (many, much) ice cubes for these drinks.
Q. 6) Anybody would be happy to get (a few, some) money.
Q. 7) Which of the (some, two) roads lead to the station?
Q. 8) There are (several, little) big cows on the small farm.
Q. 9) He bought (much, many) meat from the butcher.
Q. 10) We didn't buy (any, many) vegetables from the market.

EXERCISE 4.2

Use the right word in the bracket to complete the sentence.

- Q. 1) My mother is as (strong, stronger, strongest) as her mother.
Q. 2) Not everyone agrees she is (pretty, prettier, prettiest) than her sister.
Q. 3) Can an elephant be (tall, taller, tallest) than a giraffe?
Q. 4) That pond is the (shallow, shallower, shallowest) in this area.
Q. 5) That has to be the (interesting, more interesting, most interesting) film I have seen.
Q. 6) Of the two paths, this is (short, shorter, shortest) to get there.
Q. 7) This clown is not as (funny, funnier, funniest) as the other one.
Q. 8) He is easily the (bad, worse, worst) player in the team.
Q. 9) The second half of the play was (little, less, the least) exciting.
Q. 10) What is (far, farther, the farthest) distance you have ever run?

EXERCISE 4.3

Use an appropriate word in the bracket to complete the sentence.

- Q. 1) The supporters were (disappointing/disappointed) in the way the team played.

- Q. 2) When did you get (interesting/interested) in politics?
Q. 3) What (attracting/attracted) me most to the job was the chance to travel.
Q. 4) The tennis match was quite (exciting/excited). We enjoyed it.
Q. 5) It's sometimes (embarrassing/embarrassed) when you have to ask people for money.
Q. 6) Do you easily get (embarrassing/embarrassed)?
Q. 7) I had never expected to get the job. I was really (amazing/amazed) when I was offered it.
Q. 8) She is learning very fast. She has made (astonishing/astonished) progress.
Q. 9) I didn't find the situation funny. I was not (amusing/amused).
Q. 10) It was a really (terrifying/terrified) experience, and afterwards everybody was very (shocking/shocked).
Q. 11) Why do you always look so (boring/bored)? Is your life really so (boring/bored)?
Q. 12) He's one of the most (boring/bored) man I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything (interesting/interested).

The following adjectives come in pairs. You can use any one of these adjectives to fill in each blank provided it is the correct one:

- amusing/amused; annoying/annoyed; boring/bored;
confusing/confused; disgusting/disgusted;
exciting/excited; exhausting/exhausted;
interesting/interested; surprising/surprised
- Q. 13) He works very hard. It's not _____ that he's always tired.
Q. 14) I have nothing to do. I'm _____.
Q. 15) The teacher's explanation was _____. Most of the students didn't understand it.
Q. 16) The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really _____.
Q. 17) I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not particularly _____ in art.
Q. 18) There's no need to get _____ just because I'm a few minutes late.
Q. 19) The lecture was _____. I fell asleep.
Q. 20) I asked Emily if she wanted to come out with us but she wasn't _____.
Q. 21) I've been working very hard all day and now I'm _____.
Q. 22) He's starting a new job next week. He's quite _____ about it.
Q. 23) Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very _____.

Q 27) Which way shall we go?
[The underlined word is:]
Demonstrative adjective

- (a) Interrogative pronoun
- (b) Interrogative adjective
- (c) Exclamatory adjective

ANSWER: (c)

2018

Q 28) While the city has earned record revenue this year will behind in exports:

- (a) It still lag
- (b) It still lags
- (c) It lag still
- (d) It lags still

ANSWER: (b)

2017

Q 29) Which of the following is not a adjective?

- (a) Bravery
- (b) Intelligent
- (c) Beautiful
- (d) Honest

ANSWER: (a)

Q 30) Which of the following is not a adjective?

- (a) Bravery
- (b) Intelligent
- (c) Beautiful
- (d) Honest

ANSWER: (a)

Q 31) The people who are hardworking always succeed

The underlined part of the sentences is.

- (a) Non defining clause
- (b) Phrase
- (c) Defining clauses
- (d) Adjective clause

ANSWER: (d)

Q 32) Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) The lecture was long, a bore and uninspired.
- (b) The lecture was long, a bore and uninspiring.
- (c) The lecture was long, boring and uninspiring.
- (d) The lecture was a long, a bore and an uninspiring.

ANSWER: (c)

2014

Q 33) We need _____ guidelines to start with.

- (a) a few
- (b) any
- (c) little
- (d) some

2011

HINT: The word guidelines is countable noun which takes "a few" as an appropriate adjective.

ANSWER: (a)

- The seaside resort is frequented by **the rich and famous**.
- Every year, millions join the ranks of **the unemployed** worldwide.
- There were complaints of inadequate facilities in the new toilets for **the disabled**.
- There seems to have no plans to provide cheap housing for **the homeless**.

The nouns are used in the plural and the verbs that follow them must therefore be plural

Examples:

- **The injured** were in the thousands.
- **The disabled** have found it very difficult to get jobs.

Sometimes, the noun is a singular

Examples:

- **The accused** is found guilty.
- **The deceased** was believed to have killed himself.

Adjectives used as nouns without 'the'

The word "the" need not always have to follow the adjectival noun. It depends on how the adjectival noun is used in a sentence.

Examples:

- We do take care of our **elders**.
- The government should do something for our **homeless**.
- There must be a law to ensure the rights of **minors** are protected.
- How do you treat your **blind** in your province?

Possession of adjectival nouns

The possession of adjectival nouns is not normally indicated by the use of an apostrophe s ('s'). The correct way is to use of as shown here.

Examples:

- **No:** More luxurious apartments are being built to meet the wealthy's demand.
- **Yes:** More luxurious apartments are being built to meet the demand of the wealthy.
- **No:** The new policies will promote the poor's and the unemployed's welfare.
- **Yes:** The new policies will promote the welfare of the poor and the unemployed.

Order of Adjectives

The correct order for a row of adjectives modifying a noun

It happens often that two adjectives or even several adjectives are used to describe a noun. With more than one adjective in a row, there is a specific order for this group of adjectives to follow.

The following shows categories of adjectives in the correct order in which they are used to describe a noun.

Determiner – We normally begin a sentence of this nature with a determiner. The determiner can be an article (a, an, the), a demonstrative adjective (this, that, these, those), a possessive adjective (my, your, his, her, its, our, their) or an amount.

Observation/Opinion – beautiful, best, dirty, funny, sweet, ugly, worthless

Size – big, large, small, huge, short, thick, 2-foot-long

Age* – aged, elderly, new, 6-year-old, senior, young, youthful

Shape – circular, flat, oblong, oval, round, square, triangular

Colour – blue, emerald, green, orange, red, violet, yellow

Origin/Location – African, British, Chinese, Hawaiian, Japanese, Roman, Surinamese (It tells us where the noun comes from)

Material – bronze, gold, plastic, silk, silver, steel, wooden

Qualifier/purpose – It can be a noun (garden tool) or verb (used car) acting as an adjective.

(*Sometimes, age comes after shape.)

Examples

- I carried a very small black suitcase.
- They have some old French paintings.
- She was wearing a new red silk dress.
- That is a really ugly wooden chair.
- We bought a new round kitchen table.

LESSON NO. 05

ADVERBS

KEY POINTS

Adverbs

An **adverb** can be a word (easily) or a phrase (last night) that describes or modifies a verb, an adjective or another adverb, and sometimes a sentence, but not a noun or a pronoun. We can identify a lot of adverbs by their endings. They end in **-ly** but not all, as some words that end in **-ly** are adjectives.

Examples:

- We crawled **slowly** around on our hands and knees looking for the needle. (Adverb **slowly** modifies verb **crawl**)
- I dreamed about you **last night**. (Adverb **last night** modifies verb **dreamed**)
- The monster was **incredibly** ugly. (Adverb **incredibly** modifies adjective **ugly**)
- The heart patient collapsed **quite suddenly**. (Adverb **suddenly** modifies adverb **quite**)
- Fortunately, we were in time to buy the last tickets. (Adverb **fortunately** modifies a sentence **we were in time to buy the last tickets**)

Unlike adjectives, adverbs do not modify nouns.

Examples:

- **Incorrect:** That woman has a **beautifully** daughter. (Adverb)
- **Correct:** That woman has a **beautiful** daughter. (Adjective)
- **Incorrect:** He found the exam quite **hardly**. (Adverb)
- **Correct:** He found the exam quite **hard**. (Adjective)
- **Incorrect:** We heard a **loudly** explosion and then saw **thickly** smoke. (Adverb)
- **Correct:** We heard a **loud** explosion and then we saw **thick** smoke. (Adjective)

The adverb is an intensifier

Besides being a modifier, the adverb performs another function. As an intensifier, it makes the adjective that they modify stronger by giving it emphasis.

Examples:

- The weather is **exceptionally** cold at this time of the year.
- He is **downright** rude to his parents.
- The treatment is **extremely** dangerous for an old person like her mother.
- The witch appeared **hideously** ugly in his dream.
- The substance was found to be **highly** addictive.

Adverb Phrase

The adverb does not come in just one word. It can be a group of two or more words acting as an adverb phrase (or adverbial phrase). The adverb phrase does the work of an adverb in a sentence in modifying a verb, an adjective or another adverb. The adverb phrases are in bold.

Examples:

- He has been sitting **at the corner** for hours.
- His father owns a house **by the sea**.
- I decided to join them **to jog in the park**.
- We strolled **along the beach** after sunset.
- A couple of birds were perching **on the gate**.

Types of Adverbs

There are different kinds of adverbs expressing different meaning. The following are some of the common ones.

Adverb of time

1. A few	2. Many	ANSWERS 4.1		
6. Some	7. Two			
		3. Little	4. Few	5. Many
		8. Several	9. Much	10. Any

1. Strong	2. Prettier	ANSWERS 4.2		
6. Shorter	7. Funny			
		3. Taller	4. Shallowest	5. Most interesting
		8. Worst	9. Less	10. The farthest

1. Disappointed	2. interested	ANSWER 4.3		
6. embarrassed	7. Amazed			
11. Bored.....boring	12. Boring.....interesting	3. Attracted	4. Exciting	5. Embarrassing
16. Disgusting	17. Interested	8. Astonishing	9. Amused	10. Terrifying.....Shocked
21. exhausted	22. excited	13. Surprising	14. Bored	15. Confusing
		18. annoyed	19. boring	20. interested
		23. amusing	24. interesting	25. confused

ANSWERS 4.4				
1. proud	2. heavy			
4. skinny	5. brave		3. clumsy	
7. wild	8. much		6. narrow	
10. blind	11. dark		9. honest	
13. eight	14. muddy		12. angry	
			15. little	

ANSWERS 4.5				
1. happy	2. difficult	3. violent	4. terrible	5. violent
6. nervous	7. worrying	8. frightening	9. anxious	10. uneasy

ANSWER 4.6				
1. absent	2. present	3. innocent	4. silent	5. impatient
6. confident	7. certain	8. excellent	9. responsible	10. patient

ANSWER 4.7			
1. an unusual gold ring	2. a new green pullover	3. a beautiful old house	4. a pair of black leather gloves
5. an old American film	6. a long thin face	7. big black clouds	8. a lovely sunny day
9. a long wide avenue	10. a beautiful round wooden table	11. a small black metal box	12. a big fat black cat
13. a lovely little old village	14. beautiful long black hair	15. an enormous red, yellow umbrella	16. a high red brick wall
17. a long colorful silk dress	18. an interesting old French painting	19. a tall ancient Buddhist temple	20. an old ugly toothless witch

- Q. 24) Daud is a very _____ person. She knows a lot, she's traveled a lot, and she's done lots of different things.
- Q. 25) I can get quite _____ sometimes, and don't even know what day it is.

EXERCISE 4.4

Fill in the blanks with the following adjectives, each of which is to be used only once:

little; wild; dark; angry; eight; muddy; honest; heavy; clumsy; much; proud; skinny; brave; narrow; blind

- Q. 1) My mother is _____ as a peacock of our new house.
- Q. 2) I cannot lift this _____ metal box.
- Q. 3) That _____ boy knocked down another vase.
- Q. 4) The thin beggar raised his _____ hand.
- Q. 5) The _____ soldier was awarded a medal.
- Q. 6) They use their big cars on this _____ path.
- Q. 7) Tigers are _____ animals.
- Q. 8) He is poor. He hasn't _____ money.
- Q. 9) He is an _____ man. You can trust him.
- Q. 10) They helped the _____ man cross the road.
- Q. 11) Look at the _____ sky. It is going to rain.
- Q. 12) They have broken the window. Their father is very _____ with them.
- Q. 13) There are _____ pints in a gallon.
- Q. 14) We have to take off our shoes. This path is _____.
- Q. 15) There is only a _____ water left in the bottle.

EXERCISE 4.5

Fill in the blanks with the following adjectives:

difficult, happy, proper, terrible, violent

Each word is to be used only once.

- Q. 1) I always feel _____ when the sun is shining.
- Q. 2) The fog made driving very _____.
- Q. 3) The man became _____ when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave.
- Q. 4) You look _____. Are you all right?
- Q. 5) The court found his behavior to be perfectly _____.

Fill in the blanks with the following adjectives:

anxious, frightening, nervous, uneasy, worrying

Each word is to be used only once.

- Q. 6) He went onto the stage but was too _____ to speak.
- Q. 7) It's very _____ to the parents to not hear from him after one week.
- Q. 8) It must be very _____ to a small boy to see a ghost.
- Q. 9) She was _____ for more news about her missing husband.
- Q. 10) The storm made the crew uneasy.

Exercise 4.6

Use one of the following adjectives for each blank space below.

absent, certain, confident, excellent, impatient, innocent, patient, present, responsible, silent

Each adjective is to be used only once.

- Q. 1) This was not the first time he was _____ from school.
- Q. 2) There were many people _____ at the wedding.
- Q. 3) The judge said that the man was _____ and could be released.
- Q. 4) He did not know the answer so he remained _____.
- Q. 5) We were _____ to get into the stadium as we didn't want to miss the first few minutes of the game.
- Q. 6) He doesn't sound _____ about the future of his business.
- Q. 7) The police seem _____ that they have detained the right man.
- Q. 8) His car broke down and he still said it was in _____ condition.
- Q. 9) We will never know who is _____ for this terrible mess.
- Q. 10) I'm not going to join that long queue as I'm just not very _____.

EXERCISE 4.7

Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

Example: a ring (unusual/gold)

An unusual gold ring

- Q. 1) A pullover (nice/new)
- Q. 2) A pullover (new/green)
- Q. 3) A house (beautiful/old)
- Q. 4) A pair of gloves (black/leather)
- Q. 5) A film (old/American)
- Q. 6) A face (thin/long)
- Q. 7) Clouds (black/big)
- Q. 8) A day (sunny/lovely)
- Q. 9) An avenue (wide/long)
- Q. 10) A table (wooden/beautiful/round)
- Q. 11) A box (metal/black/small)
- Q. 12) A cat (fat/big/black)
- Q. 13) A little village (old/lovely/little)
- Q. 14) Hair (long/black/beautiful)
- Q. 15) An umbrella (red/enormous/yellow)
- Q. 16) A wall (brick/red/high)
- Q. 17) A dress (colorful/long/silk)
- Q. 18) A painting (old/interesting/French)
- Q. 19) A temple (ancient/Buddhist/tall)
- Q. 20) A witch (toothless/ugly/old)

- She walked **quickly** to get there on time. (Adverb)
- Converting a number of adjectives to adverbs by adding -ly entails removing a letter as shown in the following:

Examples:

- by adding -ly or -ally to the end of an adjective (quick -quickly, heroic -heroically),
- by adding -ly after removing the last -e from an adjective (comfortable -comfortably, possible -possibly),
- by dropping the last y from an adjective and replacing it with -ily (easy -easily, happy -happily).

Adverbs that share identical words with an adjective:

Some examples of adverbs that have the same form as adjectives and have similar meanings are: **far, fast, hard, long, right, straight, tight, wrong.**

Examples:

- I got a **cheap** pair of shoes in the sale. (Adjective)
- I got a pair of shoes **cheap** in the sale. (Adverb)
- The workers find the new machine **easy** to operate. (Adjective)
- The workers operate the new machine **easily**. (Adverb)
- Where we live isn't **far** from here. (Adjective)
- We don't live **far** away from here. (Adverb)
- She found the work quite **hard**. (Adjective)
- She worked quite **hard**. (Adverb)
- The two brothers live on **opposite** sides of the city. (Adjective)
- She has a brother who lives **opposite** to her. (Adverb)
- If we exercise regularly, we may live a **longer** life. (Adjective)
- If we exercise regularly, we may live **longer**. (Adverb)
- You have written the **wrong** name. (Adjective)
- You have written the name **wrong**. (Adverb)

There are adverbs not derived from an adjective or any other word. Adverbs such as **as, even, how, never, next, now, rather, so, soon, still, then, and too.**

Examples:

- He doesn't **even** know where the Pacific Ocean is.
- He said he had **never** been to a circus.
- She has got **rather** a lot of money to spend at this time of the month.
- She has eaten two big pizzas and is **still** hungry.

There are many adverbs that do not end in -ly. Adverbs (in bold) coming after verbs do not end in -ly

Examples:

- The climbers strove **hard** to reach the top.
- The boy jumped **over** that fence.
- The train will arrive **soon**.
- You can put this book **up** on the top shelf.
- Your mother called **yesterday**.

Adverbs are also formed from other parts of speech such as noun (accident), verb (hurry), adjective (bad) and from present participle (frightening).

Examples:

- She deleted my file by **accident**. (Noun)
- She **accidentally** deleted my file. (Adverb)
- Nick **hurried** to answer the telephone. (Verb)
- Nick moved **hurriedly** to answer the telephone. (Adverb)
- Excessive smoking is **bad** for him. (Adjective)
- His health is **badly** damaged by excessive smoking. (Adverb)
- He's **frightening** us with the speed he's driving. (Present participle)
- **Frighteningly**, there is little we could do with the speed he's driving. (Adverb)

Position of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Early	Earlier	Earliest
Fast	Faster	Fastest
Hard	Harder	Hardest
High	Higher	Highest
Late	Later	Latest
Loud	Louder	Loudest
Near	Nearer	Nearest
Soon	Sooner	Soonest

Adverbs which end in **-ly** or have three or more syllables each form the comparative with **more** and the superlative with **most**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Angrily	more angrily	most angrily
Brightly	more brightly	most brightly
Dimly	more dimly	most dimly
Freely	more freely	most freely
Gladly	more gladly	most gladly
Heavily	more heavily	most heavily
Loudly	more loudly	most loudly
Quietly	more quietly	most quietly
Sweetly	more sweetly	most sweetly
Terribly	more terribly	most terribly

The comparative form is used to compare two things.

Examples:

- We must not reach there **later** than 7 o'clock.
- You speak **more loudly** than a loudspeaker.
- Sirius shines **more brightly** than all the other stars.

The superlative form is used to compare three or more things.

Examples:

- He arrived **the earliest**, so he had to wait for the others.
- Why do you have to speak **the most loudly** of all at the meeting?
- Of all the girls, your sister sang **the most sweetly**.

Some adverbs form the comparative and the superlative irregularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Badly	worse (than)	worst (the)
Far	farther	Farthest
Far	further	Furthest
Little	less	Least
much/many	more	Most
Well	better	Best

Examples:

- Of the two teddy bears, which do you like **better**?
- This has to be the **farthest** I have ever walked in my life.

Forming Adverbs

There are three forms of adverbs: adverb formed by adding **-ly** to an adjective, adverb that shares an identical word with an adjective, and adverb not derived from an adjective or any other word.

Most adverbs are formed by adding **-ly** to an adjective:

Examples:

- He had a **sudden** heart attack while jogging. (Adjective)
- He **suddenly** had a heart attack while jogging. (Adverb)
- She had a **quick** walk to get there on time. (Adjective)

An adverb of time tells us when something is done or happens. We use it at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. We use it as a form of emphasis when we place it at the beginning. Adverbs of time include **afterwards, already, always, immediately, last month, now, soon, then, and yesterday.**

Examples:

- He collapsed and died **yesterday**.
- His factory was burned down **a few months ago**.
- **Last week**, we were stuck in the lift for an hour.

Adverb of place

An adverb of place tells us where something is done or happens. We use it after the verb, direct object or at the end of a sentence. Adverbs of place include words such as **above, below, here, outside, over there, there, under, upstairs.**

Examples:

- We can stop **here** for lunch.
- The schoolboy was knocked **over** by a school bus.
- They rushed for their lives when fire broke out in the floor **below**.

Adverb of manner

An adverb of manner tells us how something is done or happens. Most adverbs of manner end in **-ly** such as **badly, happily, sadly, slowly, quickly**, and others that include **well, hard, fast**.

Examples:

- The brothers were **badly** injured in the fight.
- They had to act **fast** to save the others floating in the water.
- At the advanced age of 88, she still sang **very well**.

Adverb of degree

An adverb of degree tells us the level or extent that something is done or happens. Words of adverb of degree are **almost, much, nearly, quite, really, so, too, very**, etc.

Examples:

- It was **too** dark for us to find our way out of the cave. (Before adjective)
- The referee had to stop the match when it began to rain **really** heavily. (Before adverb)
- Her daughter is **quite** fat for her age.
- The accident victim **nearly** died from his injuries.
- After all these years, she is still feeling **very** sad about her father's death.

Adverb of frequency

An adverb of frequency tells us how often something is done or happens. Words used as adverbs of frequency include **again, almost, always, ever, frequently, generally, hardly ever, nearly, nearly always, never, occasionally, often, rarely, seldom, sometimes, twice, usually, and weekly.**

Examples:

- They were **almost** fifty when they got married.
- He **hardly ever** says something nice to his wife.
- While overseas, he **frequently** phoned home.
- She is not **nearly** always right although she thinks she is **always** right.
- He complained that she **never** smiled back.
- We only write to each other **very occasionally**.
- Peter **seldom** reads the Bible.
- **Sometimes** he stays late in the office to complete his work.
- Our cat was bitten **twice** by the same dog.
- The man **usually** proposes marriage.

Comparison of Adverbs

There are three degrees of comparison in adverbs – the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**. The adverbs form their comparatives and superlatives using **-er** and **-est**, and **more** and **most**. Adverbs that end in **-ly** use the words **more** and **most** to form their comparatives and superlatives.

The one-syllable adverbs use **-er** in the comparative form, and **-est** in the superlative form.

- Q. 47) I found it. (at school last week)
 Q. 48) She saw her friend. (at station yesterday)
 Q. 49) There was a huge fire. (in the village; a few weeks ago.)
 Q. 50) I must go. (at eight o'clock; to the market)
 Q. 51) there was a great flood. (in 1962; throughout the valley)

The following adverbs are modifiers that modify verbs in the sentences:

accidentally, badly, carefully, deeply, easily, fast, freely, greatly, low, suddenly, well

- Q. 52) We watched a plane flying over the sea.
 Q. 53) We encourage the victims to talk about their experiences.
 Q. 54) She seldom chooses her words when speaking about other people.
 Q. 55) The mother asks her son if they been feeding him in the prison.
 Q. 56) I spilled/spilt coffee on my new shirt.
 Q. 57) The doctor told him to breathe and hold his breath.
 Q. 58) He had to brake to avoid a dog.
 Q. 59) The kung fu master broke the brick with his bare hand.
 Q. 60) His parents were angry that he behaved that night.
 Q. 61) The unknown disease is spreading and is feared by the people.

The following adverbs are modifiers that modify verbs in the sentences:

badly, briefly, lately, narrowly, proudly, repeatedly, softly, steadily, swiftly, tightly

Place each one in the correct position in the sentence:

- Q. 62) We walked and within minutes we were at the station.
 Q. 63) The other day we spoke on the phone.
 Q. 64) She put her head on her arms and cried
 Q. 65) Where have you been?
 Q. 66) They pushed him down and kicked him
 Q. 67) The four of them jogged up the hill.
 Q. 68) Her grandma hurt her leg in the fall.
 Q. 69) He welcomed his son at the airport by hugging him
 Q. 70) She displayed her degree certificate to her parents.
 Q. 71) The team was beaten in their first away game.

The following adverbs are modifiers that modify adjectives in the sentences:

absolutely, almost, certainly, freely, mostly, particularly, physically, regularly, surprisingly, unusually, wildly

Place each one in the correct position in the sentence. Two modifiers are required for the last sentence.

- Q. 72) The problem was extremely to solve.
 Q. 73) Exotic foods are available in supermarkets..
 Q. 74) Ali's camera was cheap.
 Q. 75) That pineapple is large.
 Q. 76) This tool is useful to a carpenter.
 Q. 77) Because of the abundant evidence, he was guilty.
 Q. 78) His stalls are fruit-sellers.
 Q. 79) The supporters were excited when their team scored the first goal.
 Q. 80) We were sure we would win.
 Q. 81) Dinner is ready now.
 Q. 82) She jogs to keep herself fit.

The adverbs given in bold are modifiers that modify other adverbs in the sentences.

Place each one in the correct position in the sentence.

almost, always, hardly, mostly, very, highly, mentally, quite, rather, reasonably

- Q. 83) The weather was unbearably hot yesterday.
 Q. 84) Members of the club are highly educated people.
 Q. 85) He believes ghosts are not easily visible to human beings.
 Q. 86) She ever says a nice word about other people.
 Q. 87) We nearly migrated to Australia three years ago.
 Q. 88) I think the Third World War is unlikely to happen.
 Q. 89) They are well trained personnel ready to deal with the situation.
 Q. 90) Our team lost as they were inadequately prepared to face such a tough competition.
 Q. 91) They had a long argument, but the fight happened suddenly.
 Q. 92) She answered the phone rudely.

Q 34) Select the correct sentence:

2013

- (a) My feet seemed hardly to touch the earth.
- (b) My feet hardly seemed to touch the earth.
- (c) Hardly my feet seemed to touch the earth.
- (d) My feet seemed to touch the earth hardly.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 35) Select the correct sentence:

- (a) Certainly, she is the best person for the job.
- (b) She is the best person for the job certainly.
- (c) She certainly the best person for the job.
- (d) The best person certainly she is for the job.

ANSWER: (a)

LESSON NO. 5 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 5.1

Choose the most suitable adverb from the following to fill in each blank:

across, anywhere, around, backwards, over

Each word is to be used only once

- Q. 1) In the park, you can go and find a place to sit.
- Q. 2) We thought it was fun to swim the river.
- Q. 3) They are there but we are not going to talk to them.
- Q. 4) There were many people walking in the park.
- Q. 5) Sometimes we had to take a step to allow others to pass as it was very crowded.

Use the adverb from the following to fill in each blank: below, down, further, under, underneath

Each word is to be used only once.

- Q. 6) The hostages were forced to lie
- Q. 7) He bought an old car with some rust
- Q. 8) The bridge was too low for the ship to sail
- Q. 9) From up here at the tower, we look down at the traffic far
- Q. 10) We didn't go than the first five miles because of the thunderstorm.

Choose the most suitable adverb from the following to fill in each blank:

always, ever, just, nearly, never, only, quite, slightly, still, unusually

Each word is to be used only once.

- Q. 11) We hardly see him go to church.
- Q. 12) My father is late for work.
- Q. 13) It took two hours to get here.
- Q. 14) They were very friendly.
- Q. 15) He has strong hands.
- Q. 16) She has completed her degree course.
- Q. 17) There is no news about the missing brothers.

- Q. 18) We were a bit late because there was a lot of traffic today.

- Q. 19) It will get worse if we do nothing about it.

- Q. 20) We are worried that we will get lost on the way.

EXERCISE 5.2

Place the adverb in bracket in the correct position in the sentence

- Q. 21) We walked to get there on time. (quickly)
- Q. 22) She always reaches school at half past seven. (punctually)
- Q. 23) He picked up the jug and some water spilled out. (carelessly)
- Q. 24) He picked up the wrong bag. (carelessly)
- Q. 25) The car stopped outside our house. (abruptly)
- Q. 26) He arrived home. (unexpectedly)
- Q. 27) She stared at it as if she had never seen a snake. (before)
- Q. 28) He pulled the rope. (with all his strength)
- Q. 29) He told us that we should not speak. (angrily)
- Q. 30) He did his work so he had to do it again. (badly)
- Q. 31) He asked whether I could lend him some money. (hopefully)
- Q. 32) She opened the parcel. (most carefully)
- Q. 33) I arranged all the stamps. (in their right order)
- Q. 34) She looked at the letter. (thoughtfully)
- Q. 35) That boy has been behaving. (in a strange way recently)
- Q. 36) Tom waited for the train to arrive. (impatiently)
- Q. 37) His father likes to go for a walk in the evening. (often)
- Q. 38) He has finished the job you gave him. (just)
- Q. 39) She goes to that shop. (seldom)
- Q. 40) I am sure there is something wrong with it. (quite)
- Q. 41) She prefers tea to coffee. (usually)
- Q. 42) The rain had stopped when I arrived. (already)
- Q. 43) It is time for us to go. (almost)
- Q. 44) I have finished my exercise book. (nearly)
- Q. 45) I go to bed before midnight. (nearly always)
- Q. 46) Those men came back to repair the pipe. (never)

Adverbs occupy different positions in a sentence: at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end.
At the beginning of a sentence before the subject

Examples:

- Foolishly, we decided to try it out.
- Fortunately, we got home before it started to rain.
- Hopefully, it will not rain.
- Luckily, I had enough money to buy it.
- Naturally, we hope for our team to win.
- Silently, he crept up the stairs.
- Sometimes, she gives me a lift to work. (The comma may or may not be used.)
- Suddenly, all the lights went out.

At the end of a sentence

Examples:

- We had to eat quickly.
- He admitted punching and kicking the man repeatedly.
- Our old neighbor fell and hurt her leg badly.
- Hey, you have not pronounced my name correctly.

The following examples show adverbs used in the middle of a sentence. They come before or after the main verb. Where there is an auxiliary verb, the adverb is found between the auxiliary verb and the main verb, or after the auxiliary verb and before an adjective that the adverb modifies.

The adverb comes before the verb

Examples:

- Your fat uncle accidentally knocked my vase of fresh flowers over.
- A customer bravely tackled a thief at a store.
- She carefully folded the letter and gave it to him.
- Knowing he was late, he nervously glanced at his watch.
- Their parents often go to the cinema.
- Accidents regularly occur on this crowded street.
- She reluctantly agreed to his proposals.

The adverb comes after the verb

Examples:

- The sisters dressed beautifully for the occasion.
- She spoke briefly to the reporters.
- The tourist looked carefully at the antique before she bought it.
- I watched a helicopter hover noisily overhead.
- He laughed loudly at his own joke.
- She smiled sweetly at him.
- We walked quickly to get there on time.

The adverb is used between the auxiliary verb 'be' and the main verb

Examples:

- The rain has already stopped when we arrived.
- We do occasionally go bird-watching.
- They have openly accused him of stealing.
- He was successfully operated on after the accident.
- Their parents were tragically killed in a road accident.

The adverb is placed between the auxiliary verb used as main verb and an adjective that the adverb modifies

Examples:

- She is always quick to point out other people's faults.
- As usual, they are very late.
- He was happily married with three young children.
- The boys were incredibly lucky to be alive after what happened.
- Their team was soundly beaten.

LESSON NO. 06

PREPOSITIONS

KEY POINTS

Prepositions

Prepositions are mostly small single words used before a noun (**at** home), a noun phrase (**across** the river) or a pronoun (**for** you). They may also consist of two or more words acting as a single preposition called **compound preposition**. The prepositions are used to form relationships between the nouns and other words in a sentence by linking them.

There are many prepositions, most of which are single-word such as **above, along, behind, from, near, of, on, since, to, until, and with**.

A preposition is followed by a noun, noun phrase, or pronoun, each of which becomes the object of the preposition. Only the noun can be the object; other parts of speech such as verb, adjective, or adverb cannot be the object.

Examples:

- We woke up **before** sunrise.
(The noun **sunrise** is the object of the preposition **before**.)
- We often stroll **along** the beach.
(The noun phrase **the beach** is the object of the preposition **along**.)
- She waved **to** him.
(The pronoun **him** is the object of the preposition **to**.)

Removal of preposition

Sometimes a preposition does not form a necessary part of a sentence. It can be removed without affecting the meaning of the sentence

Examples:

- You can go if you want **to**.
- You can go if you want.
- There is nothing to be afraid **of**.
- There is nothing to be afraid.

Different types of prepositions

The different types of prepositions are used to provide us with different information with regards to time (prepositions of time), place (prepositions of place), and direction (prepositions of movement). Besides these three, there are others: prepositions of manner and prepositions of cause and reason. The same preposition however can be used for the different divisions into time, place and direction.

Different prepositions used to show time or place or direction

Examples:

- I shall meet you **at** 2 o'clock tomorrow. (Indicates time: at 2 o'clock)
- The kettle is **on** the table. (Indicates a place or position: on the table)
- We walked **to/towards** the cinema. (Indicates direction: to/towards the cinema)

Same preposition used to show time or place or direction

Examples:

- I shall meet you **at** 2 o'clock on Sunday under the railway bridge (Indicates time)
- We will wait for you **at** the entrance to the stadium. (Indicates place)
- A stranger pointed **at** (Indicates direction).

Prepositions of Time

Indicate the time and date or the period of time that something happens. Some of the prepositions used include **around, at, by, during, from, in, on, since, throughout, and until**.

Prepositions of time used to indicate a particular time.

supermarkets..

- Q. 74) Ali's camera was surprisingly cheap.
- Q. 75) That pineapple is unusually large.
- Q. 76) This tool is particularly useful to a carpenter.
- Q. 77) Because of the abundant evidence, he was certainly guilty.
- Q. 78) His stalls are mostly fruit-sellers.
- Q. 79) The supporters were wildly excited when their team scored the first goal.
- Q. 80) We were absolutely sure we would win.
- Q. 81) Dinner is almost ready now.
- Q. 82) She regularly jogs to keep herself physically fit.
- Q. 83) The weather was almost unbearably hot yesterday.
- Q. 84) Members of the club are mostly highly educated people.
- Q. 85) He believes ghosts are not always easily visible to human beings.
- Q. 86) She hardly ever says a nice word about other people.
- Q. 87) We very nearly migrated to Australia three years ago.
- Q. 88) I think the Third World War is highly unlikely to happen.
- Q. 89) They are reasonably well trained personnel ready to deal with the situation.
- Q. 90) Our team lost as they were mentally inadequately prepared to face such a tough competition.
- Q. 91) They had a long argument, but the fight happened quite suddenly.
- Q. 92) She answered the phone rather rudely.

ANSWERS 5.1

- Q. 1) In the park, you can go anywhere and find a place to sit.
- Q. 2) We thought it was fun to swim across the river.
- Q. 3) They are there but we are not going over to talk to them.
- Q. 4) There were many people walking around in the park.
- Q. 5) Sometimes we had to take a step backwards to allow others to pass as it was very crowded.
- Q. 6) The hostages were forced to lie down.
- Q. 7) He bought an old car with some rust underneath.
- Q. 8) The bridge was too low for the ship to sail under.
- Q. 9) From up here at the tower, we look down at the traffic far below.
- Q. 10) We didn't go further than the first five miles because of the thunderstorm.
- Q. 11) We hardly ever see him go to church.
- Q. 12) My father is never late for work.
- Q. 13) It took nearly two hours to get here.
- Q. 14) They were always very friendly.
- Q. 15) He has unusually strong hands.
- Q. 16) She has just completed her degree course.
- Q. 17) There is still no news about the missing brothers.
- Q. 18) We were a bit late because there was quite a lot of traffic today.
- Q. 19) It will only get worse if we do nothing about it.
- Q. 20) We are slightly worried that we will get lost on the way.

EXERCISE 5.2

- Q. 21) We walked quickly to get there on time.
- Q. 22) She always reaches school punctually at half past seven.
- Q. 23) He picked up the jug carelessly and some water spilled out.
- Q. 24) He carelessly picked up the wrong bag.
- Q. 25) The car stopped abruptly outside our house.
- Q. 26) He arrived home unexpectedly.
- Q. 27) She stared at it as if she had never seen a snake before.
- Q. 28) He pulled the rope with all his strength.
- Q. 29) He told us angrily that we should not speak.
- Q. 30) He did his work badly so he had to do it again.
- Q. 31) He asked hopefully whether I could lend him some money.
- Q. 32) She opened the parcel most carefully.
- Q. 33) I arranged all the stamps in their right order.
- Q. 34) She looked thoughtfully at the letter.
- Q. 35) That boy has been behaving in a strange way recently.
- Q. 36) Tom waited impatiently for the train to arrive.
- Q. 37) His father often likes to go for a walk in the

EXERCISE 5.3 EXERCISE ANSWERS

- Q. 38) evening.
- Q. 39) He has just finished the job you gave him.
- Q. 40) She seldom goes to that shop.
- Q. 41) I am quite sure there is something wrong with it.
- Q. 42) She usually prefers tea to coffee.
- Q. 43) The rain had already stopped when I arrived.
- Q. 44) It is almost time for us to go.
- Q. 45) I have nearly finished my exercise book.
- Q. 46) I nearly always go to bed before midnight.
- Q. 47) Those men never came back to repair the pipe.
- Q. 48) I found it at school last week.
- Q. 49) She saw her friend at the station yesterday.
- Q. 50) A few weeks ago, there was a huge fire in the village/There was a huge fire in the village a few weeks ago.
- Q. 51) I must go to the market at eight o'clock.
- Q. 52) In 1926 there was a great flood throughout the valley.
- Q. 53) We watched a plane flying low over the sea.
- Q. 54) We encourage the victims to talk freely about their experiences.
- Q. 55) She seldom chooses her words carefully when speaking about other people.
- Q. 56) The mother asks her son if they been feeding him well in the prison.
- Q. 57) I accidentally spilled/spilt coffee on my new shirt.
- Q. 58) The doctor told him to breathe deeply and hold his breath.
- Q. 59) He had to brake suddenly to avoid a dog.
- Q. 60) The kung fu master broke the brick easily with his bare hand.
- Q. 61) His parents were angry that he behaved badly that night.
- Q. 62) The unknown disease is spreading fast and is greatly feared by the people.
- Q. 63) We walked swiftly and within minutes we were at the station.
- Q. 64) The other day we spoke briefly on the phone.
- Q. 65) She put her head on her arms and cried softly.
- Q. 66) Where have you been lately?
- Q. 67) They pushed him down and kicked him repeatedly.
- Q. 68) The four of them jogged steadily up the hill.
- Q. 69) Her grandma hurt her leg badly in the fall.
- Q. 70) He welcomed his son at the airport by hugging him tightly.
- Q. 71) She proudly displayed her degree certificate to her parents.
- Q. 72) The team was narrowly beaten in their first away game.
- Q. 73) The problem was extremely difficult to solve.
- Q. 74) Exotic foods are freely available in

Prepositions of manner

Are about the way something happens or how something is done. They often use the word **by**. Some examples of preposition of manner are **by, in, like, on** and **with**.

Examples:

- We went there **by** taxi.
- The supplies were dropped **by** parachute.
- He fell **in** his dash for the finishing line.
- Our mother laughs **like** a hyena.
- The tourists arrived on the island **on** a hovercraft.
- She reacted **with** anger to what he said.

Prepositions of cause and effect

Prepositions of cause and effect or reason are used to express the cause of something or the reason that something happens, and the effect it has on another thing. Some examples of these prepositions which include compound prepositions most commonly used are **as, as a result (of), because (of), consequently, due to, for, from, hence, on account of, since, therefore, and through**.

Examples:

- **As a result of** an accident, he now walks with a limp.
- He cannot walk **because of** his swollen leg.
- The quarrel was **due to** her rudeness.
- They divorced **for** many reasons.
- Businesses don't succeed **from** luck alone.
- She doesn't eat much **on account of** her acute depression.
- Our sales increase **through** effective marketing.

Simple and Compound Prepositions

A simple preposition is a one-word preposition. A preposition can also come in a two-word or a three-word combination, which is called a compound preposition. A compound preposition functions as a single preposition. A compound preposition that consists of two words include according to, because of, different from, due to, and instead of. Three-word compound prepositions are as far as, in addition to, in front of, and in spite of, etc.

Words that are used only as prepositions

One-word prepositions

Against	Concerning	Onto
Amid	Despite	Toward
Among	During	Towards
At	From	Unto
Bar	Into	Upon
Beside	Of	With

Examples:

- His doctor advised the mother and daughter **against** riding a camel since they are allergic to camel's hair.
- There was a single duck **amid** a brood of chickens.
- The mother called the three sons to divide the pizza **among** them.
- She began to think of getting married **at** the age of thirteen.
- Six cats slept **atop** a three-meter wall.
- She has eaten all my grapes, **bar** one. (bar = except for)
- She was sure someone stood **beside** her but didn't appear on the photo.
- He went to catch crabs in the dark, **despite** the weather.
- He got into a fight with the coach driver **during** the trip.
- He began to sing aloud **from** an old songbook.
- Most of his personal belongings **including** his pet goose were destroyed in the fire.

Examples:

- Our grandparents usually have a catnap **around** noon.
- I had a big argument with my grandma **at** lunchtime.
- The funeral should be over **by** five o'clock.
- The astrologer said I would be dead **in** five years.
- The boss is always sleepy **on** Monday mornings.

Prepositions of time indicate the period of time that something happens

Examples:

- I had a couple of terrifying nightmares **during** the night.
- She swears never to talk to me again **from** tomorrow.
- His girlfriend has been missing **since** last Sunday.
- He slept **throughout** the lecture.
- They said I was breastfed **until** the age of six.

Prepositions of time used to indicate a particular time in relation to another

Examples:

- I start to wonder whether I will be in Heaven or Hell **after** death.
- I usually need to go to the toilet **before** having my breakfast.

Prepositions of place

Indicate where something is or where something happens (**across, in, inside, on, outside, under**).

Examples:

- The newly built bridge **across** the river has just collapsed.
- His alarm clock went off twice and he is still **in** bed.
- There was something like a snake **inside** the dark cage.
- There was a fly **on** the bull's nose.
- I fell asleep while waiting **outside** the clinic for my turn.

Prepositions of place also tell us the position of something in relation to another (**behind, beside, between, in front, near**).

Examples:

Behind his farmhouse was a big scary scarecrow.

- I sat **beside** a snoring woman in the cinema.
- There is an awkward gap **between** her two front teeth.
- Someone parked a tractor **in front** of our house.
- Don't go **near** her. She's got a bad cold.

Prepositions of Direction

Prepositions of direction indicate that something is headed for or directed to somewhere. Prepositions of direction include prepositions such as **into, onto, through, to, toward**.

Examples:

- A fly got **into** his soup while he was eating it.
- I must have put the pumpkin **onto** someone else's trolley in the supermarket.
- The bus driver just drove **through** the tunnel.
- The teacher has gone **to** the loo again.
- The snake slithered **toward** the bullfrog.

These prepositions show direction of movement from somewhere, and the prepositions used are **away from, from, off, out**.

Examples:

- He warned them to keep **away from** his daughter.
- Two tigers in the circus have escaped **from** their cage.
- The strong wind blew the wig **off** his head.
- Everyone ran **out** the door when the fire started.

- Not being **confident about** their future, they decided to emigrate.
- He has been **absent from** school for two days now.
- She is **busy with** her make-up.
- The resort is **famous for** its nightlife.

After verb

Examples:

- The audience **laughed at** her funny jokes.
- She doesn't seem to **worry about** anything in life.
- This little boy **dreams of** driving a big car one day.
- She **believes in** ghosts and angels.
- He's helping her to **choose between** the two cars.

Preposition follows direct object of transitive verb

Examples:

- She **forgives him for** going out with the other girl.
- He **added pepper to** my soup.
- He **stole something from** the church.
- The stranger **robbed him of** all his money.
- The magician **turned a carrot into** a rabbit.

Preposition in front of a prepositional phrase

The preposition is commonly followed by a noun phrase. Together, they form the prepositional phrase. In the following examples, the prepositional phrases are shown in bold. The noun in the prepositional phrase is the object of the preposition.

Examples:

Do you remember where the sun sets? The sun sets **in the west**. (Preposition: **in** / Prepositional phrase: **in the west** / Object of preposition: **west**)

The old building was burnt **to the ground**.

The two clowns are riding **on a circus horse**.

A flock of ducks waddles **along the river bank**.

He had a dream that he fought hard **against a huge green monster**.

Preposition can be at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a sentence

Examples:

This morning, my grandmother appeared **more cheerful than** my grandfather.

To whom did you complain?

For him to question me like that is beyond his authority.

This is the cave **in which** there is at least a million of bats.

There is a small bald patch **on top of** my head.

You are talking about a species of dinosaur that I have never heard **of**.

He soon discovered that his new wife is difficult to live **with**.

Examples:

- The family **aboard** the train panicked when the grandfather was nowhere to be seen. (Preposition)
- The helicopter crashed, seriously injuring the husband and wife **aboard**. (Adverb)
- We watched small crabs walking **along** the beach. (Preposition)
- She brought her seven children **along** when she went to the market. (Adverb)
- The railway runs **alongside** the highway. (Preposition)
- We wondered what the driver wanted when his car came **alongside**. (Adverb)
- We can find public **around** here. (Preposition)
- If we're not lost, why do you keep driving **around** in circles without getting anywhere? (Adverb)
- If you walk in the dark and hear footsteps following you, will you be too terrified to look **behind** you? (Preposition)
- The old woman entered her house first with five puppies following **behind**. (Adverb)
- Her grandfather is looking for a pair of red shorts that will reach **below** his knees. (Preposition)
- Two beads of sweat trickled down his cheek and drip to the floor **below**. (Adverb)
- There is a big lizard on the wall looking at a big fly **beneath** it. (Preposition)
- Chased by the dogs, he climbed the tree and looked at the dogs barking **beneath**. (Adverb)
- Is that you **between** the two coconut trees on the photo? (Preposition)
- This is a photo of that famous footballer's legs with a football **between**. (Adverb)
- He said he was told by the aliens who spoke English that they came from a planet **beyond** the solar system. (Preposition)
- The police's search for the escaped prisoner extended to the river and **beyond**. (Adverb)
- Our neighbor was killed **by** a crocodile. (Preposition)
- From time to time, he would come **by** to borrow some money. (Adverb)
- It took a full three minutes for all the bats to fly **out** of the cave. (Preposition)
- In the fight, he knocked his younger brother's tooth **out**. (Adverb)
- **Throughout** her life, she had a phobia about flying. (Preposition)
- The parents argued endlessly about money, but the children remained silent **throughout**. (Adverb)
- He insulted my new haircut and later said he didn't mean **to**. (Preposition)
- Every one of us gathered round his bed waiting for him to come **to** (= to become conscious) (Adverb).
- The burglar hid a lot of the loot **under** his bed. (Preposition)
- We napped **under** that shady tree for an hour. (Adverb)
- Your puppy is sleeping **underneath** my car. (Preposition)
- His left eye was swollen with a bruise **underneath**. (Adverb)
- He could not live **within** his means and had to make excessive use of his credit cards. (Preposition)
- Two days after the big argument with him, she was still angry **within**. (Adverb)
- She bought a pet puppy **without** a tail. (Preposition)
- We long for a holiday but there isn't much money left, so we'll have to manage **without**. (Adverb)

Positions of preposition in the sentence

It's accurate to say that almost every sentence has at least a preposition. Prepositions used in a sentence are commonly placed immediately after a noun, an adjective, or a verb. Just as common are prepositions coming before a noun phrase. Prepositions are also used after a direct object.

After noun

Examples:

- The hostages didn't give up **hope of** being released alive.
- The people are unlikely to forget your **kindness to** them.
- What he did had brought **shame on** his family.
- She felt **anger at** his change of holiday plan.
- Both parties expressed **satisfaction with** the agreement.

After adjective

Examples:

- None of his relatives and friends believed him **guilty of** this terrible crime.

- This is the third time my grandfather walked **into** me when he didn't have his glasses on.
- Last night, he heard the sound **of** footsteps coming from the roof.
- The dining hall opens **onto** a cemetery.
- He had very little information **regarding** the policeman's disappearance.
- The train is now heading **toward** the tunnel.
- The prisoner threatened to fast **unto** death to get his alcoholic drinks.
- They look **upon** him as a role model of how to teach adults to behave like adults.
- Her weight grows **with** each passing day.

Two-word compound prepositions**Examples:**

- **According to** his mother, he often talked in his sleep.
- **As of** next week, all of you will eat less to lose weight.
- Her face was perfect **aside from** that one hairy mole.
- The bucks fought hard and it's all **because of** a doe.
- You waste a lot of time arguing **instead of** agreeing.
- The detective didn't know he was sitting **next to** a wanted man.
- Sometimes my grandfather tears pages **out of** my magazines.

Three-word compound prepositions**Examples:**

- The explosion could be heard **as far as** five kilometers away.
- We keep five dogs **in addition to** two cats.
- A steamroller parked **in front of** his house.
- They continued with their search and rescue mission **in spite of** the bad weather.
- He can't sing any more **on account of** his failing health.
- The villagers carried pails of water **on top of** their heads.

Same Word used as preposition and adverb

Many words that are prepositions can also belong to other parts of speech such as adjective, adverb, conjunction, noun, and verb. To recognize the words as prepositions or adverbs, we need to remember that they are followed by a noun or pronoun, making the noun or pronoun the object of the preposition. An adverb does not take an object.

The words in the following table are used as prepositions and adverbs in the example sentences that follow. Many of them belong to other parts of speech as well, such as adjective and conjunction. They can also be verbs or nouns. For example, the prepositions **behind** and **underneath** are also nouns, and the prepositions **round** and **like** also function as verb and noun, while the preposition **till** can also be a verb.

Words that are either prepositions or adverbs

Aboard	Below	To
Across	Beneath	Under
Along	Between	Underneath
Alongside	Beyond	Within
Around	By	Without
Astride	Out	
Behind	Throughout	

Examples:

A hairy spider crawls **across** the dining table. . (Preposition)

This river has no bridge, we have to swim **across**. (Adverb)

In the first sentence above, the noun **table** and its modifier **dining** come after the preposition **across** (across the dining table). The noun phrase **dining table** is the object of the preposition **across**. The second sentence has the verb **swim** and the word **across** that comes after the verb is easily recognized as an adverb as it doesn't take an object, and it also modifies the verb **swim**.

- Q. 42) a few moments, we watched the crowd gathered. We then moved the crowd to see what had happened.
- Q. 43) We ran the stairs to where the shouting came There he was and we could see the anger his face.
- Q. 44) He turned his sister and smiled her.
- Q. 45) "Go back the village. I'll wait here the elephant. Leave me here my gun the dark."
- Q. 46) He blew the lamp and lay his tent.
- Q. 47) The tribal chief drew his dagger and prepared wait his revenge.
- Q. 48) He struck upwards all his strength, cutting deeply the tiger's neck both sides.
- Q. 49) The force the wind threw their boat away the shore; then, they dived the water, ready swim ashore.
- Q. 50) One by one, the rescuers picked them the darkness and carried them the lights the helicopter.

Use one of the following prepositions to fill in each blank: **at, by, down, for, from, in, into, next to, of, on, out, to, towards, with.**

- Q. 51) my opinion, our friends did not come Sunday because the floods the north the State.
- Q. 52) So instead, we went a cycle ride. We saw a warehouse fire, and the wind was blowing the flames our village.
- Q. 53) The firemen were short water. They were trying to put the fire beating the flames sticks.
- Q. 54) Suddenly there was shout one the villagers who said that there was paint stored a building the burning warehouse.
- Q. 55) The store burst a mass flames, sending clouds of black smoke the sky.
- Q. 56) The flames spread the houses, and turned some of them ashes.
- Q. 57) this point, we began to think the whole village would be burnt the ground.
- Q. 58) The firemen sprayed the nearby houses water, trying to stop the fire spreading them.
- Q. 59) Luckily, the wind died and the fire began to burn itself

Put a correct preposition in each blank space.

- Q. 60) He passed away four o'clock the afternoon Monday.

- Q. 61) the evening, there's a great film TV and a comedy programme midnight.
- Q. 62) I stopped his house to borrow a raincoat the middle a storm Sunday.
- Q. 63) my opinion, you can rely him to come noon.
- Q. 64) I saw him looking some books the library Saturday. His brother was him.
- Q. 65) I posted the parcel the main Post Office Market Road.
- Q. 66) It won't fall because I have twisted the wire that post to keep it position.
- Q. 67) I was woken up the sound of the radio my brother's room. The radio was on a bit high volume.
- Q. 68) He was lying injured the field a fall his horse.
- Q. 69) I was shocked the way which he reacted someone calling him 'fatty'.
- Q. 70) The load of eggs fell the lorry when it was turning the warehouse low speed.
- Q. 71) The train whistled its way the station about ten o'clock the morning.
- Q. 72) We parked our car the side the road another car.
- Q. 73) There is plenty tin left that mine which is to another mine.
- Q. 74) We threw the net the river and sat to wait a good catch.
- Q. 75) There is a waterfall farther the river. You can see the foam floating down us.
- Q. 76) Sunday is the day which he goes church where he joins the congregation and kneels prayer.
- Q. 77) most Saturdays I go fishing my brother, who seems to have had a lot of good luck fishing.
- Q. 78) My friend used to go to school his bicycle but now he goes bus or taxi because he lives farther away.
- Q. 79) Some of the boxes the lorry were not tied firmly.
- Q. 80) Sometimes I talk myself my room lying awake night.
- Q. 81) the last two weeks I spent my time my hobby which is chasing butterflies.
- Q. 82) You can catch plenty octopuses this method.

LESSON NO. 6 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 6.1

Fill in each blank with one of these two prepositions:
(in, on)

- Q. 1) What is that you have your mouth?
Q. 2) I'll probably see the group leader Friday.
Q. 3) We first visited the gold mine 1999.
Q. 4) The picture of the one-eyed monster can be seen page 999.
Q. 5) We are moving house about a month's time.
Q. 6) three days' time the derelict building will be demolished.
Q. 7) Sometimes I read my bedroom the evening.
Q. 8) He was injured the left arm a fight with a stranger.
Q. 9) The full moon comes the fifteen of the month.
Q. 10) that night there will be a candle-light procession.
Q. 11) They live mulberry Drive that village the Austrian border.

Use one of the following prepositions to fill in each blank: **at, from, of, to, with.**

- Q. 12) She was absent this year's ostrich racing event.
Q. 13) A number of uninvited guests were present her wedding.
Q. 14) He is late again even though he lives within a mile here.
Q. 15) Who's the crazy one who filled my shoes sand?
Q. 16) Look closely at my eyes and you will find one is different the other.
Q. 17) We love our uncle and are always ready help him do anything.
Q. 18) His lawyer said his client is innocent the crime of cannibalism.
Q. 19) I just can't beat him even if I pray. He's always excellent playing board games.
Q. 20) Do we have to learn to be patient our neighbor who always plays loud music?
Q. 21) Why do you have to tell me the advantages using a computer?

Use one of the following prepositions to fill in each blank: **about, at, for, from, in, into, of, off, on, out, to, under, with.**

- Q. 22) The Chinese Lunar New Year celebrations last fifteen solid days, the brand new moon the full moon.
Q. 23) the very first day, the children greet their elders warmly "kong hee fai cai!"

- Q. 24) They offer a cup tea their elders who never refuse, and the children each receives a little red packet of money return.
Q. 25) some families, the first meal this day must not contain any meat.
Q. 26) The people pray good health and prosperity, and they express thanks the happiness the past year.
Q. 27) This is a lucky day children. They are not scolded all for whatever mischief they make.
Q. 28) If the house is swept this day, all the good luck will be swept the house.
Q. 29) There is a tradition that Man came the world the seventh day, so this seventh day the lunar New Year is a birthday everybody.
Q. 30) There is a feast fish vinegar and spices.
Q. 31) This is a tradition ... Hokkien people China.
Q. 32) "Chap Goh Meh" the fifteen day of the lunar new year is a special day for young men and girls.
Q. 33) Fire-crackers are set to frighten evil spirits, and the girls throw oranges the sea or river the evening the hope of getting a good husband.
Q. 34) It is good non-Chinese people know something this yearly festival.
Q. 35) A hawker is waiting the bridge. He wants catch the oranges his net.

Use one of the following prepositions to fill in each blank: **along, at, by, down, for, from, in, into, of, on, out, to, towards, up, with.**

- Q. 36) He was the happiest man his village the start the day. He was married two days previously a Sunday.
Q. 37) He was proud his wife and pleased the smile his father's face.
Q. 38) None of them knew the sadness which was to happen them.
Q. 39) She was walking the path her mother's house when she was attacked a tiger night.
Q. 40) Someone told him that his wife had been carried away the jungle a tiger.
Q. 41) He found his wife's body the foot tree the jungle.

Q 36) Don't poke your nose my affairs.
In (b) On (c) Into (d) by

ANSWER: (c)

Q 37) Most of the students are keen their studies.

(a) In (b) On (c) Of (d) All of the above

ANSWER: (b)

Q 38) Saqib was arrested and charged murder.

(a) Into (b) On (c) With (d) near

ANSWER: (c)

Q 39) My mind, what we need in this company is a better marketing plan?

(a) For (b) In (c) To (d) At

ANSWER: (c)

Q 40) If you like sport, this is a great place. There's a lot to choose _____.

(a) among (b) from
(c) at (d) for

HINT: "Choose" takes "from" along.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 41) Choose the correct sentence.

- (a) Turn left by the crossroads when you reach it.
- (b) Turn left by the crossroads until you reach it.
- (c) Turn left with the crossroads when you reach it.
- (d) Turn left at the crossroads when you reach it.

HINT: "Turn" takes "at" as preposition.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 42) The lady sitting me has an elegant style:

(a) at (b) beside (c) about (d) around

ANSWER: (b)

Q 43) I insist the withdrawal of your statement:

(a) for (b) on (c) at (d) in

ANSWER: (b)

Q 44) You will be the perfect in charge this group.

(a) of (b) to (c) by (d) on

ANSWER: (a)

Q 45) The senator is opposed this new legislation.

(a) at (b) to (c) by (d) on

ANSWER: (b)

Q 46) He was arrested and charged murder.

(a) with (b) into
(c) over (d) about

ANSWER: (a)

Q 47) second thoughts, I opted for a cold

2018

drink.

(a) At (b) By (c) On (d) For

ANSWER: (c)

Q 48) Add some milk and sugar the tea.

(a) to (b) at (c) in (d) on

ANSWER: (a)

Q 49) Please help someone the house is fire.

(a) at (b) in (c) an (d) by

ANSWER: (b)

Q 50) My children don't approve my smoking.

(a) in (b) of (c) on (d) at

ANSWER: (b)

Q 51) He before the interview board.

- (a) was afraid to appear
- (b) was afraid of appearing
- (c) was afraid of appearance
- (d) feared appearance

HINT: After "afraid" preposition "of" is used.

ANSWER: (b) & (c)

2013

2011

2013

2014

LESSON NO. 6 EXERCISE ANSWERS

1. In	2. On	3. In
4. On	5. In	6. In
7. In.....in	8. In....in	9. On
10. On	11. On...in...on	12. From
13. At	14. From	15. With
16. From	17. To	18. Of
19. At	20. With	21. Of
22. For...from...to	23. On...with	24. Of...to
25. For...on	26. For...for...of	27. For...at
28. On...out	29. Into...on...of...for	30. Of...with
31. Of...in	32. On...for	33. Off...off...into...in...with
34. For...to...about	35. Under...to...with	36. In...at...of...on
37. Of...with...on	38. Of...to	39. Alone...from...by...at
40. Into...by	41. At...of...in	42. For...towards
43. Up...from...on	44. To...at	45. To...for...with...in
46. Out...down in	47. Out...to...for	48. With...into...from
49. Of...from...into...to	50. Up in...towards...of	51. In...on...of...in...of
52. Out for...on...towards	53. Of...out...by...with	54. From...of...in...next to
55. Into...of...into	56. To...into	57. At...to
58. With...from...to	59. Down...out	60. At...in...on
61. In...on...at	62. At...in...of...on	63. In...on/upon...at/by
64. At/for/though...in/at...on...with /by/near	65. At...in/on	66. Off/down...round...in
67. By...in...at	68. On...after...from	69. By...in...to
70. Off...towards...at	71. Into...at...in	72. At/on...of...behind
73. Of...in...near	74. In/into...down...for	75. Up...to/towards
76. On...to...in	77. On...with...in	78. On...by...by
79. On...down/up	80. To...in...at	81. During/for...on
82. Of...by/with	83. In...about/by	84. To...on
85. On...in...for...of	86. By...on	87. To...with
88. At...before/after...for	89. To...on	90. On...in/into
91. At...for	92. For...in...in/into	93. At...off on
94. For...at/around	95. With...of...with	96. Into...by
97. at...from...from	98. in...up...across	99. across...up...on
100. on...of	101. during...of/about/from ...to	102. on/across...for
103. for...for...to	104. behind...behind/beside	105. in...on...to
106. to...in...with...on/into...at...i n	107. onto...out...into...of	108. for...in...from...after by
109. of...on...to...of...of	110. in...at...for...against... off	111. at...to...without
112. for...by...for...for	113. for...on	114. at...out...without
115. since...over...at...for	116. of...of...to	117. of/about...in...under...for ...of...in
118. in...by/before	119. of	120. with...for
121. of/about...for...across...on	122. of...in...of	123. in...of...after
124. for...round...in	125. to...in...by	126. on...in...of
127. in...on at...for	128. under...for...on...of	129. across...up...onto
130. up...for...from	131. with...after/before	132. for...in with
133. from...up in...on	134. off...in...in	135. to...of...of...in
136. out...to	137. on...in...as...among	138. as...at/in

- Q. 124) He took us a drivethe island the pouring rain.
- Q. 125) She comes school a taxi but goes home bus.
- Q. 126) We built sandcastles the beach the middle a cold moonlit night.
- Q. 127) He failed his second attempt to pass his exam, and had to staycollege another year.
- Q. 128) They are all fifteen except Peter whose fifteen birthday was the fifth last month.
- Q. 129) When a mouse scurried the floor, she jumped and climbed the table.
- Q. 130) She tidied the whole house in preparation the visit of her friends abroad.
- Q. 131) The floor shook the loud explosion which occurred just midnight.
- Q. 132) The victory was a cause celebration, and everyone joinedthe singing.
- Q. 133) There's nothing to stop setting business as a consultant the residential premises.
- Q. 134) His car swerved the road when he tried to avoid a ghostly figurea white dress standing his way.
- Q. 135) Despite living the ripe old age 100, she never experienced losshearing which often occurs old age.
- Q. 136) While Jack helped the old man of the car, Jill helped the old ladyher feet.
- Q. 137) My parents worka farm but my brother works a circus a clownother jobs.
- Q. 138) My uncle works a fishmonger the market.

ACADEMY
Estb - 1990

- Q. 83) The passengers the taxi were worried the fast speed.
- Q. 84) The soothsayer says me that the world ends next Sunday, that is the fifth of May.
- Q. 85) He turned the radio and tuned to BBC news coverage the tsunami.
- Q. 86) Some of us will be going bus and some our bicycles to the circus.
- Q. 87) I apologized my friend whom I have already broken three appointments.
- Q. 88) We arrived the island just sunrise. We had previously come here a picnic.
- Q. 89) I listened a hair-raising tale of cannibalism the radio.
- Q. 90) I accompanied my uncle a hunting trip the jungle.
- Q. 91) We camped the foot of the mountain two days.
- Q. 92) When I went a walk early the morning, the breeze blew my face.
- Q. 93) We put the luggage the back of the car and then set our journey.
- Q. 94) We went to a surprise party his sister. It broke up midnight.
- Q. 95) I took some photographs my camera a hippopotamus its mouth open wide.
- Q. 96) The heavy lorry knocked the back of our bus accident.
- Q. 97) I called Tom's house yesterday to see if he had recovered his illness. He was still suffering a bad back.
- Q. 98) We ate our food a shady spot and then packed everything to leave when dark clouds began to spread most of the sky.
- Q. 99) John soon rowed the river and tied the boat the other side.
- Q. 100) both sides the lonely road there were endless mighty trees.
- Q. 101) the holidays I intend to visit many places which I have heard friends who have been those places.
- Q. 102) The new dam that was built the river produces electricity many parts of the country.
- Q. 103) I made an urgent request their help to look the key the storeroom.
- Q. 104) He parked his car a line of parked cars the building.
- Q. 105) about two weeks we're going holiday the Sahara Desert.
- Q. 106) I expect to return Shanghai about a week's time to continue my pioneering

- research why frogs croak night and not the daytime.
- Q. 107) Water splashed my face when the bottle slipped my hand and dropped the basin full water.
- Q. 108) the past few weeks, I was recovering a mysterious illness. I was hospital well looked doctors and nurses.
- Q. 109) The front tyre/tire my car was punctured the way a funeral a friend who was a victim a religious sacrifice.
- Q. 110) Yesterday, I was hurt a fall my home. After that, everything went wrong me, such as knocking my head the wall and the vase the table.
- Q. 111) I got up late eight o'clock. I said goodbye my parents, and had to leave hurriedly my breakfast.
- Q. 112) While waiting the bus, I saw a motorcyclist stopped the police speeding and not wearing a helmet.
- Q. 113) I couldn't sit some weeks after I had a surgery my backside.
- Q. 114) She swore angrily me and walked quickly of the door looking back.
- Q. 115) It's great to meet my cousin whom I hadn't seen 2010. We spent an hour or so lunch and then his place where we chatted more than an hour.
- Q. 116) Her house is full things as she likes to buy all sorts things which add the collection.
- Q. 117) Last night, I dreamed a policeman whispering my left ear that I was arrest possession the most powerful drug the world.
- Q. 118) I hope to get married early December but I must find a woman the end of this month.
- Q. 119) He doesn't like to admit that he has virtually no hope getting her.
- Q. 120) She usually dances me but only about a minute or two.
- Q. 121) I was thinking a suitable day our journey the Gobi Desert a nice camel.
- Q. 122) You can put that statue a dinosaur the corner the room.
- Q. 123) The man charge the team is a bad loser. He always behaves badly his team loses.

Either ... or / neither ... nor

When using **either ... or** or **neither ... nor**, ensure that the verb agrees with the subject that is closer to it. This means if the two subjects are singular, the verb is singular; and the verb is plural if both subjects are plural. But if one subject is singular and the other one is plural, the verb can be singular or plural depending on the subject closer to it.

Examples:

- Either John or **Johnny plays** as goalkeeper in the match.
- Neither he nor his **brother wants** to be the goalkeeper.
- Either the boys or the **girls have** to perform first.
- Neither the children nor their **parents were** late for the performance.
- Either the manager or the **players are** blamed for the poor performance.
- Either the players or the **manager is** blamed for the poor performance.
- Neither the players nor the **manager is** criticized for the loss.
- Neither the manager nor the **players are** criticized for the loss.

Examples:

- **No:** I like the rainbow **not only** is it of different colours **but also** it curves.
(The first part uses a prepositional phrase [of different colours], while the second part uses a verb [curves]. It will be correct to have both parts grammatically parallel.)
- **Yes:** I like the rainbow **not only** is it of different colours **but also** it is of curved shape.
(Now both are prepositional phrases: **of different colours** and **of curved shape**.)

Error to avoidExamples:

- **No:** I couldn't go **neither** by bus nor by train.
(Neither is a negative word. It's wrong to add another negative word **couldn't**. Two negative words make the sentence positive.)
- **Yes:** I could go **neither** by bus nor by train.

Connecting Conjunctions

When using conjunctions in a sentence, ensure the words, phrases or clauses have the same grammatical structure.

Conjunctions connect same parts of speechExamples:

- I have a **brother and** a sister. (Noun linked to noun)
- We **joked and** laughed. (Verb to verb)
- She is **tall and** beautiful. (Adjective to adjective)
- He often eats **quickly and** noisily. (Adverb to adverb)

Conjunctions connect wordsExamples:

- We bathe our **dog and** cat in the same tub.
- **Gorillas and** chimpanzees are primates.
- **Gorillas and** chimpanzees, **but not** monkeys, are primates.
- The giraffe was **tall but** skinny.

Conjunctions connect phrasesExamples:

- The fisherman is **carrying a bucket full of fish and** walking cheerfully along the beach.
- They were **full of smile and** happiness together as they went up to receive the awards.
- I like **watching TV and** eating popcorn at the same time.
- He likes **listening to ghost stories but not** visiting haunted places.

- The unlined words can be avoided as unnecessary.
- You need to know what rights you have. You also need to know how to use them.
- You need to know what right you have **and** how to use them.
- This is an expensive machine. It is an immensely useful machine.
- This is an expensive **but** immensely useful machine.
- We didn't believe a word he said. None of us believe his excuses as well.
- We didn't believe a word he said, **nor** his excuses.
- You can choose the white one. You can also choose the black one.
- You can choose the white one **or** the black one.

Subordinating Conjunctions

A **subordinating conjunction** is a word that introduces a subordinate clause which cannot form a sentence on its own. The subordinating conjunction connects the subordinate clause, also called a dependent clause, to an independent clause to form a sentence.

The following examples show subordinate clauses in bold. Each subordinate clause always begins with a subordinating conjunction. The rest of each of the sentences not in bold is the independent clause, also called the main clause.

Examples:

- These girls are already drunk **although they have drunk only a little**.
- We had a bag of popcorn for dinner **because we had nothing else to eat**.
- It's urgent that something be done **before more villagers are trampled to death by the elephants**.
- She has aged a lot **since the last time we met**.
- The whole ostrich-rearing business will fail **unless we put in more money**.
- My kitchen roof leaked **whenever it rained**.
- **Even though she is quite fat**, she can run quickly upstairs.

As can be seen, the above subordinate clauses are introduced by subordinating conjunctions: **although, because, before, since, unless** and **whenever**. A subordinating conjunction can come in more than one word as shown in the last example: **even though**. A subordinate conjunction can come at the beginning of a sentence. But the subordinate clause must not be used independently as a complete clause or a sentence.

More examples of subordinating conjunctions: after, as, if, lest, now, once, provided, supposing, than, though, till, until, when, where, whereas, wherever, whether, while

Subordinating conjunctions of more than one word: as long as, as much as, as soon as, as though, even if, if only, in order that, just as, now that, provided that, rather than, so that,

An independent clause can be turned into a subordinate clause

Examples:

- I was very angry with him. I punched him on his nose. (Two independent clauses)
- I was very angry with him, **so I punched him on his nose**.
- (An independent clause is now a subordinate clause shown in bold).
- Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions as mentioned earlier are paired conjunctions, which means they do not come in single words. They come in the form of pairs of words: **either ... or; neither ... nor; both ... and; not only ... but also**, and **whether ... or**. The correlative conjunctions connect two words, phrases or clauses.

Examples:

- You can buy **either** this chick **or** that duckling.
- They claimed what they saw were **neither** humans **nor** monkeys.
- **Both** he **and** his brother are joint leaders of the street gang.
- He stole **not only** a car **but also** two motorbikes.
- I could not decide **whether** to marry her **or** her sister.

LESSON NO. 07

CONJUNCTIONS

KEY POINTS

Conjunctions

A conjunction is a word that is used to join words, phrases, and both independent and dependent clauses in a sentence. (Although, and, because, but, if, or, while) or a phrase (as though, as well as, in order that, so that).

There are three groups of conjunctions.

Coordinating conjunctions join words, phrases, and clauses.

Subordinating conjunctions join only clauses.

Correlative conjunctions are paired conjunctions.

Coordinating Conjunctions

A coordinating conjunction is used to join together words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. There are seven coordinating conjunctions: **and, but, for, nor, or, so, and yet**. These words can be remembered by remembering FANBOYS (F = for; A = and; and so on).

For: We use **for** to express a reason or purpose. It has similar meaning as **because, since** and **as**, and can be used in place of any one of them.

Examples:

- He finds it difficult to see clearly, **for** he is partially blind.
- He left early, **for** he had to be on time for the meeting.

And: We use **and** to add one thing to another.

Examples:

- They kicked **and** punched him. (Connecting words)
- The mother bought her a strawberry ice cream **and** a bear lollipop. (Connecting phrases)

Nor: We usually use **nor** before the second negative after the first one. We can also use it as the last of a set of negatives.

Examples:

- The audience was not very impressed by their performance, **nor** their jokes.
- I notice your socks are never washed, **nor** your car.

But: We use **but** to introduce an additional phrase or clause that is different from what has already been mentioned.

Examples:

- He accidentally stepped on a dog's tail **but** didn't get bitten.
- There were only small beans in the soup **but** delicious.

Or: We use **or** to show alternatives or different possibilities.

Examples:

- We can go now **or** when it stops raining.
- Is that beef **or** mutton in the curry?

Yet: We use **yet** to add something surprising because of what has just been mentioned.

Examples:

- He is only a little boy, **yet** he is able to carry such a heavy load.
- I arrived there half an hour late, **yet** no one else had turned up.

So: We use **so** to mean **for this reason**. It has similar meaning as **therefore**.

Examples:

- The rain got heavier, **so** the match had to be abandoned.
- His neighbor threatened to burn her house down, **so** she made a police report.

Avoid repeating unnecessary words when using conjunctions

Examples:

- If he is not here soon, we shall leave without him.
- We shall leave without him **if** he is not here soon.
- **When** you see him, please talk to him about it.
- Please talk to him about it **when** you see him.
- **Although** she is my colleague, we hardly talk to each other.
- We hardly talk to each other **although** she is my colleague.
- **Because** the weather is bad, we decide not to go out.
- We decide not to go out **because** the weather is bad.
- **Before** I go to bed, I have a glass of milk.
- I have a glass of milk **before** I go to bed.
- **After** the accident, he decided to give up his job.
- He decided to give up his job **after** the accident.

(We use a comma when a conjunction introducing a subordinate clause comes before the main clause.)
The conjunction 'that'

We use the word **that** as a conjunction to introduce a subordinate clause to make a statement or provide more information. In many instances, the conjunction **that** may be left out without affecting the meaning of the sentence.

Some basic ideas of the conjunction **that**:

That as a conjunction is commonly used.

That introduces the **that-clause**.

That-clause can be the subject or object of a sentence.

That can be left out but not if it begins a clause.

The following show how the conjunction **that** is used.

Examples:

- He said **that** he was catching fish in the river.
- It is possible **that** the murderer is her own husband.
- She was so angry **that** she couldn't sleep.
- They are hoping **that** their missing dog will come home.
- It is true **that** my grandfather wrote a book about my grandmother.

The conjunction **that** introduces a **that-clause** which is a **subordinate clause**. A subordinate clause cannot stand on its own as a complete sentence.

Examples:

It is quite likely **that we will be late for the firework display**.

(That part of the above sentence in bold is a **that-clause**. We cannot use it as a sentence.)

Wrong: That we will be late for the firework display.

(Wrong because it is a subordinate clause, also called a dependent clause. It must be joined to a main clause to make a complete sentence. The main clause is **It is quite likely**.)

A **that-clause** can come at the beginning of a sentence as the subject or at the end of a sentence as the object.

Examples:

That he got up late does not mean he doesn't have to go to school. (Subject)

He recalled **that he had sent the letter sometime last week**. (Object)

We can leave out **that** wherever it may appear in a sentence but not if it is at the beginning.

Examples:

- **Correct:** He said **that** he would help me with my homework.
- **Correct:** He said he would help me with my homework.
- **Correct:** It is true **that** her grandmother is one hundred years old.
- **Correct:** It is true her grandmother is one hundred years old.
- **Correct:** **That** he didn't know anything about it is no excuse.
- **Incorrect:** He didn't know anything about it is no excuse.

More conjunctions:

Conjunctions connect clauses

In joining clauses we leave out some words:

Examples:

- We went closer. We were able to see it better.
- We went closer **and** were able to see it better.
- The zoo has two hippos. It also has two giraffes.
- The zoo has two hippos **and** two giraffes.
- She is friendly. She is not very considerate.
- She is friendly **but** not very considerate.
- Will you have a coffee? Or will you have a tea?
- Will you have a coffee **or** tea?
- Conjunctions Function as Preposition, Adverb, or Adjective
- A conjunction can be a preposition, an adverb, or an adjective. It depends on its use in a sentence. Care is required to ensure its correct use when constructing a sentence.

Examples:

- Eat slowly **before** you choke again. (Conjunction)
- We went to bed **before** the explosion. (Preposition)
- The parents had a big fight twice **before**. (Adverb)
- He fell into a river, **but** a passerby rescued him. (Conjunction)
- She was a brilliant student **but** talkative. (Preposition)
- Colourful and fragrant flowers were on sale that included roses, tulips, and carnations, to name **but** a few. (Adverb)
- We must sleep now **as** we have to get up before sunrise. (Conjunction)
- This is a photo of him **as** a prisoner. (Preposition)
- His new puppy is **as** black as charcoal. (Adverb)

Conjunction can be another part of speech

Examples:

- He couldn't even sign his cheque, **for** he was completely drunk. (Conjunction)
- His grandchildren booked a coffin **for** him when he fell into a coma. (Preposition)
- Her husband had an affair with a colleague, **so** his wife did the same with her boss. (Conjunction)
- She hates her nosy neighbour and so does her husband. (Adverb)
- The rumour was about aliens out to kidnap the President, but that was not **so**. (Adjective)
- More on Conjunctions

Choosing the right conjunction is important to make the meaning clear.

Examples:

- He is intelligent **but** hardworking.
- He is intelligent **and** hardworking.
- (Since the conjunction **and** connect similar ideas, it should be used in the above sentence.)

Examples:

- I have always been weak in mathematics **and** I have never failed a test.
- I have always been weak in mathematics, **but** I have never failed a test.
- (**But** is more appropriately used because the two sentences above have opposite ideas.)

When 'and' is used to connect two words or phrases in a sentence, no comma is used. Commas are used when there are three or more items in a sentence.

Examples:

- I had bacon and an egg.
- I had bacon, a toast, and an egg.

We can start a sentence with a conjunction, or place it in the middle of the sentence. A comma is used when a conjunction introducing a subordinate clause comes before the main clause as shown here. The subordinating conjunctions are in bold.

Examples:

- Q. 14) The little boy can lift the box _____ it is quite heavy.
- Q. 15) It had not rained for weeks _____ the villagers had been praying every day for the rain.
- Q. 16) The baby cried _____ its mother woke up.
- Q. 17) The boy could not reach the book _____ it was on the top shelf.
- Q. 18) The police had not arrived _____ the accident caused a long traffic jam.
- Q. 19) She won the contest _____ she was the best candidate.
- Q. 20) They blamed the referee _____ they lost the match.

EXERCISE 7.5

Each correlative conjunctions comes in a pair of words. Use one of the following pairs to complete each sentence: **either ... or, neither ... nor, both ... and, not only ... also, not only ... but also, whether ... or**

- Q. 1) "Could I come over at _____ three _____ four o'clock?" asked Joan.
- Q. 2) The teacher refused to mark his work because his book was _____ torn _____ dirty.
- Q. 3) I really need a holiday but _____ in Spain _____ France.
- Q. 4) I'm going to fish tomorrow, _____ it rains _____ shines.
- Q. 5) _____ did he borrow a lot of money from us, he refused to pay back a single cent.
- Q. 6) The children at the centre can _____ hear _____ speak.
- Q. 7) She employs a maid to do _____ the cooking _____ washing for her family.
- Q. 8) We have enough spices for only one type of curry. We can cook _____ chicken curry _____ mutton curry.
- Q. 9) The boy is really talented. He _____ knows how to play the piano _____ can also compose music.
- Q. 10) I do not like him. He is _____ rude _____ selfish.
- Q. 11) We do not know _____ it's you _____ me who will have to do it.
- Q. 12) Each class is to present _____ a drama _____ a song for the concert.
- Q. 13) The invitation is for two persons, so _____ Jack _____ his wife can attend the function.
- Q. 14) We are waiting for the boys. _____ Roy _____ Joseph has come yet.
- Q. 15) Alfred _____ got up late this morning _____ missed the train.
- Q. 16) "Why is the baby crying?" " _____ she is hungry _____ her nappy needs changing."
- Q. 17) _____ we go now _____ in an hour's time, it doesn't matter as it's still very early.

- Q. 18) Our Yellow House was _____ this year's sports.
- Q. 19) "Oh, dear! I have left _____ my purse _____ keys in the other bag," said Jean.
- Q. 20) _____ you ask Mary _____ Lucy, she will give you the same answer.

EXERCISE 7.6

Use one of the following correlative conjunctions to complete each sentence:

- either ... or, neither ... nor, both ... and, not only ... also, not only ... but also, whether ... or**
- Q. 1) The father was _____ disappointed _____ angry with his son's exam results.
- Q. 2) We are going to watch _____ the documentary _____ the current affairs program.
- Q. 3) "Would you marry a man who has _____ fame _____ money?" Mary asked her best friend.
- Q. 4) The boss _____ came in late, he was _____ in a bad mood.
- Q. 5) Mother said, "You _____ help me prepare dinner _____ do your homework."
- Q. 6) The police are investigating _____ the fire was started by someone _____ by other causes.
- Q. 7) Bill was so worried about his missing daughter that he could _____ sleep _____ eat properly.
- Q. 8) _____ does she run her own business, _____ (she) does a lot of work for charity.
- Q. 9) _____ my mother _____ my aunt are twin sisters.
- Q. 10) She said she's going to marry him _____ her parents like it _____ not.
- Q. 11) We are required to sit for _____ the Mechanics paper _____ the Statistics paper.
- Q. 12) Since their dad died, _____ Roy _____ his brother have done a lot of drinking.
- Q. 13) The intruder _____ robbed his victim, he _____ shot him dead.
- Q. 14) _____ the workers _____ their supervisor is to be blamed for the accident.
- Q. 15) If the firefighters fail to put out the fire it will spread _____ to our houses, _____ the row of retail stores.
- Q. 16) The court will decide _____ not she is guilty of using the gun to kill him in self-defense.
- Q. 17) You can colour the design with _____ crayons _____ paints.
- Q. 18) _____ did the team lose the match, it _____ had one player sent off.
- Q. 19) You must have been _____ daydreaming _____ sleeping in class again.
- Q. 20) You are _____ a wonderful husband _____ a loving father.

LESSON NO. 7 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 7.1

Join these sentences with the coordinating conjunction **and** or **but**.

- Q. 1) My aunt has a son. My aunty has two daughters.
 Q. 2) The naughty boy took a stone. He threw it at a bird.
 Q. 3) The fisherman is poor. The fisherman is honest.
 Q. 4) We hailed a taxi. The driver did not see us.
 Q. 5) Eagles are birds. Hawks are birds.
 Q. 6) He ran very fast in the race. He slipped and fell.
 Q. 7) I went to the grocery store. The grocery store was closed.
 Q. 8) He opened his wallet. He took out some money.
 Q. 9) He went to the plum tree. He plucked a few plums.
 Q. 10) The street musician played his music loud. Nobody listened to him.
 Q. 11) Rocky called _____ told me what happened, _____ I just didn't believe him.
 Q. 12) _____ you said you wanted a pen _____ a piece of paper.
 Q. 13) I knocked on the door _____ there was no answer _____ I had to go away.
 Q. 14) She took out some money _____ paid his brother, _____ he wouldn't accept it.
 Q. 15) He has many girl friends _____ does not have a special one, _____ he thinks he will have one when he's older.
 Q. 16) She looked into the mirror _____ smiled to herself, _____ no one in the family knew why she often did that.
 Q. 17) He speaks three languages _____ English too, _____ he does not speak English fluently.
 Q. 18) He's the only son _____ he wants to join the army _____ his parents did not agree to it.
 Q. 19) Mr Daud does not speak English _____ he speaks Pushto _____ German very well.
 Q. 20) They thought it was an antique vase _____ paid a lot for it, _____ it turned to be a fake.

EXERCISE 7.2

Join these sentences using the coordinating conjunction **or** or **so**.

- Q. 1) Nobody answered my call. I hung up.
 Q. 2) James met with an accident. He was sent to the hospital.
 Q. 3) You must not skip your lunch. You will feel hungry.
 Q. 4) They have been sleeping the whole day. They have missed their lunch.
 Q. 5) Let's walk faster. We will be caught in the rain.

- Q. 6) His car is under repair. He has to go to work by bus.
 Q. 7) The witness has to tell the truth in court. He will be punished.
 Q. 8) He must be very tired. He wouldn't have gone to bed so early.
 Q. 9) I heard a dog barking. I went to the window to have a look.
 Q. 10) Do you like coffee _____ tea _____ both?

EXERCISE 7.3

Use one the following coordinating conjunctions to fill each blank: **for, nor, or, so, yet, but**

1. Walk quickly _____ you will be late.
 2. It looks a genuine piece of antique, _____ it's a fake.
 3. We avoid the library on Sundays, _____ it's always crowded.
 4. Jack can't come over tomorrow _____ can Jill.
 5. I heard a noise _____ I turned the light on.
 6. It's almost time for the train to depart _____ we have not bought our tickets yet.
 7. They handed him to the police, _____ he was caught stealing from a woman.
 8. They believed the dark figure they saw that night was neither a ghost _____ a human.
 9. She said she was very angry, _____ she was smiling.
 10. We told him to stop reading and turn off the light _____ we can sleep.

EXERCISE 7.4

Use one the following coordinating conjunctions to fill each blank: **although, because, since, unless, until, when**.

- Q. 1) His grandpa said the climate was different _____ he was young.
 Q. 2) He has been feeling sick _____ he came back from holiday.
 Q. 3) Let us wait in the bookshop _____ the rain stops.
 Q. 4) You cannot be a lawyer _____ you have a law degree.
 Q. 5) She has not called _____ she left last week.
 Q. 6) He was angry _____ he heard when happened.
 Q. 7) He had to retire _____ of ill health.
 Q. 8) We will go swimming next Sunday _____ it's raining.
 Q. 9) I don't understand how she can say she's happy _____ she looks so sad.
 Q. 10) _____ the car is old it still runs well.
 Q. 11) She will die _____ the doctors operate immediately.
 Q. 12) He did not attend the meeting _____ he was sick.
 Q. 13) I always trust Ray _____ he is my son.

Each is a pair of words (conjunction + that) which together is used as a conjunction.

Examples:

1. **providing/providing that** = on the condition that; if. **That** in these two sentences can be omitted.
We will be there early **providing that** we can catch the first train.
We welcome her to come along **provided that** she can stay out late.
2. **assuming that** = accept as true without proof
I think she will marry the wealthy boss's son even **assuming that** she doesn't love him.
3. **seeing that** = because; accepting the fact that
You may as well join them, **seeing that** they need another volunteer.

ETEA PAST PAPERS (LESSON NO. 7 CONJUNCTIONS)

2017

- Q 52)** Though Aleem is poor, _____ he is honest.
(a) but (b) nevertheless (c) yet (d) still

ANSWER: (c)

- Q 53)** Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) Brazil is a populous contrary; the beache's are warm sandy and spotless clean.
- (b) Brazil is a populous country; the beaches are warm, sand and spotlessly clean.
- (c) Brazil is a populous country, the beaches are warm sandy spotlessly clean \
- (d) Brazil is a populous; country the beaches are warm, sandy and spotlessly clean

ANSWER: (b)

2016

- Q 54)** Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) He can speak Japanese because he was born in Canada
- (b) He can speak Japanese until he was born in Canada
- (c) He can speak Japanese even though he was born in Canada
- (d) He can speak Japanese so he was born in Canada

HINT: The conjunction *though* meets the condition here

ANSWER: (c)

2015

- Q 55)** Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) As far as I know he bears a good moral character.
- (b) So far as I know, he bears a good moral character.
- (c) As long as I know, he bears a good moral character.
- (d) Not that I know he bears a good moral character.

ANSWER: (a)

2013

- Q 56)** Select the correct sentence:

- (a) Farid and Javed both are good swimmers.
- (b) Both Farid and Javed are good swimmers.
- (c) Good swimmers are Farid and Javed both.
- (d) Swimmers are good both Farid and Javed.

ANSWER: (a)

Phrasal verb in the passive voice

Not all phrasal verbs can be used in passive sentences but many can. Two phrasal verbs are used here:

knock down and look down on.

Examples:

- Active: They **knocked down** the front wall for some renovation work.
- Passive: The front wall **was knocked down** for some renovation work.
- Active: He feels his family **looks down on** him because he has little formal education.
- Passive: He feels he **is looked down on** by his family because he has little formal education.

Tenses in the Passive Voice

The use of a tense in a passive sentence must be the same as that in the active sentence.

Simple present

Examples:

- Active: The big monkey **scratches** the small monkey.
- Passive: The small monkey **is scratched** by the big monkey.

Simple present continuous

Examples:

- Active: Their dog **is chasing** my cat.
- Passive: My cat **is being chased** by their dog.

Present perfect

Examples:

- Active: The men **have loaded** the sheep onto trucks.
- Passive: The sheep **have been loaded** onto trucks (by the men).

Simple past

Examples:

- Active: That kid **kicked** me on my knee.
- Passive: I **was kicked** on my knee (by that kid).

Past continuous

Examples:

- Active: The gang members **were discussing** the planned robbery.
- Passive: The planned robbery **was being discussed** (by the gang members).

Past perfect

Examples:

- Active: The hunter **had shot** two wild boars.
- Passive: Two wild boars **had been shot** by the hunter.

Simple future

Examples:

- Active: The children **will blow up** these balloons.
- Passive: These balloons **will be blown up** (by the children).

Future continuous

Examples:

- Active: She **will be painting** the doghouse.
- Passive: The doghouse **will be being painted** (by her).

Future perfect

Examples:

- Active: The police **will have questioned** the suspects.

LESSON NO. 08

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE

KEY POINTS

Active and Passive Voice

Verbs have two voices: an **active voice** and a **passive voice**. Voice as the form of a verb shows whether the subject of the verb does the action (the active voice) or whether the action is done to it (the passive voice). Accordingly, we can write a sentence in either of the two different ways. Nearly all the transitive verbs (verbs that have an object) can be used in the passive voice.

The verbs that are never used in the passive voice include **elude, escape, flee, get, have, let, like, race, resemble, and suit**. Other verbs that cannot be used as passive verbs because they take no direct object which are necessary to become the subjects include **arise, consist (of), depend (on), exist, fall, happen, occur, result (from), rise**. In passive voice, a verb or verb phrase typically uses the verb **be** (e.g. **was**), followed by a main verb in the past participle form. The verb is in the **active voice** when the subject, which can be a person or thing, performs the action. The following examples will show that changing the active sentence into a passive voice causes the subject to become the object, and the object becomes the subject.

Examples:

- Cats ate the fish.
(Subject: cats; verb: ate; object: fish. The doer of the action is the **cats**. The verb **ate** is in the active voice and is followed by the object **fish**.)
- The fish was eaten by cats.
(Subject: fish; verb: eaten; object: cats. This sentence is passive as the action is done to the subject which is the **fish**. The subject in the active voice **cats** now becomes the object of the verb **eaten**.)

Active and passive sentences

The verb or verb phrase used in the passive sentence typically uses the verb **be**, and is followed by the past participle form of a main verb and the preposition **by**. The passive verb should follow the tense of the active verb. For example, if the active verb is in the simple present tense, the passive verb too is in the simple present tense.

Examples:

Active sentence: The snake has swallowed a rodent.

Passive sentence: A rodent has been swallowed by the snake.

(**Has been** is a form of the verb **be**. **Swallowed** is the past participle of the verb **swallow**. The preposition **by** has to be used here; otherwise, no one knows what swallowed the rodent.)

Active sentence: The mosquitoes are biting me tonight.

Passive sentence: I am being bitten by mosquitoes tonight.

(**Am being** is a form of the verb **be**. **Bitten** is the past participle of **bite**.)

Passive verb is transitive verb

Only verbs that take on an object (**transitive verb**) can be a passive verb. The following examples have sentences in the active voice. Converting them into passive sentences seems quite impossible to do as each of them has an intransitive verb that does not have an object.

Examples:

- He **runs** away.
- The sun **shines** brightly.
- The boss **feels** tired today.

Using with

The preposition **by** can be omitted and another preposition **with** can be used in its place to show that something is used to perform an action.

Examples:

- **Active:** She **cut** the paper **with** a pair of scissors.
- **Passive:** The paper **was cut** (by her) **with** a pair of scissors.
- **Active:** He **beat** the prisoner **with** a metal bar.
- **Passive:** The prisoner **was beaten** (by him) **with** a metal bar.

LESSON NO. 7 EXERCISE ANSWERS

S.No.	Answers 7.1	Answer 7.2	Answers 7.3	Answers 7.4	Answers 7.5	Answers 7.6
1	and	So	or	when	either or	not only, but, also
2	and	so	yet	since	both, and	either, or
3	but	or	for	until	neither	neither, nor
4	but	so	over	unless	whether, or	not only, also
5	and	so	so	since	Not only, also	either, or
6	but	or	yet	when	neither, nor	whether, or
7	but	Or	for	because	both, and	neither, nor
8	and	or	no	unless	either, or	Not only, but, also
9	and	so	yet	when	not only, but, also	Both, and
10	but	or, or	Yet, so	Although	Both, and	Whether, or
11	and, but			unless	Whether, or	Either, or
12	But, and			because	either, or	Both, and
13	But, and			because/since	both, and	not only, also
14	and, but			although	Neither, nor	Neither, nor
15	but, and			although	not only, but, also	not only, but also
16	and, but			until	Either, or	whether or
17	and, but.			because/since	Whether, or	either, or
18	and, but			until	Neither, nor	Not only, also
19	but, and			because/since	Both, and	Either, or
20	and, but			when	Whether, or	not only, but also

ETEA PAST PAPERS (LESSON NO. 8 ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE)

2018

Q 57) You are called names by him.

[Choose the correct voice:]

- (a) He is calling you names
- (b) He calls you names
- (c) He called you names
- (d) You are being called names by him

ANSWER: (b)

Q 58) The hunter's fatal accident_ in the newspaper yesterday.

- (a) Is reported
- (b) Will be reported
- (c) Was reported
- (d) Was reporting

ANSWER: (c)

Q 59) I have seen the teacher outside the class this morning.

- (a) The teacher has seen me outside the class this morning.
- (b) The teacher have been seen outside the class this morning.
- (c) The teacher were seen outside the class this morning.
- (d) The teacher has been seen by me outside the class this morning.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 60) Someone is knocking at the door.

- (a) The door has been knocked at.
- (b) The door was knocked at by someone.
- (c) The door was being knocked by someone.
- (d) The door is being knocked at.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 61) One should keep one's promises.

[Choose the correct voice]

- (a) Promises should be kept.
- (b) One should keep his promises
- (c) One's promises are kept.
- (d) One's promises should be kept by him.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 62) You cannot pump the ocean dry.

- (a) The ocean cannot be dry pump by you.
- (b) You cannot dry the ocean by pumping.
- (c) By pumping the ocean cannot dried by you.
- (d) The ocean cannot be pumped dry by you.

ANSWER: (d)

2017

Q 63) Why did your supervisor take such a strong disciplinary action when you were innocent?

- (a) Why has such a strong disciplinary action taken by your supervisor when you were innocent?
- (b) Why was such a strong disciplinary action being taken by your supervisor when you were innocent?
- (c) Why was such a strong disciplinary action taken by your supervisor when you were innocent?

(d) Why such a strong disciplinary action was taken by your supervisor when you were innocent?

ANSWER: (c)

Q 64) The rules forbid passengers to cross the railway line.

- (a) Passengers were forbidden by the rules to cross the railway line.
- (b) Passengers are being forbidden by the rules to cross the railway line.
- (c) Passenger are forbidden by the rules to cross the railway line
- (d) Passengers are forbid by the rules to cross the railway line.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 65) Do not disturb him or nothing

- (a) Let not he be disturbed for nothing
- (b) He is not to be disturbed him for nothing
- (c) Nobody should disturb him for nothing
- (d) We should be not disturb him for nothing

ANSWER: (a)

Q 66) People chain to have seen the suspect in several cities.

- (a) The suspect was claimed to be seen by the people in several cities.
- (b) The suspect is claimed to have been seen is several cities.
- (c) The suspect has claimed to be seen by the people in several cities.
- (d) The suspect is being claimed to be seen is several cities by the people

ANSWER: (b)

2016

Q 67) The principal has forbidden smoking on the campus.

Select the correct passive voice:

- (a) Smoking has been forbidden on the campus by the principal.
- (b) Smoking had been forbidden on the campus by the principal.
- (c) Smoking was being forbidden on the campus by the principal.
- (d) It is forbidden by the principal to smoke on campus

HINT: In Present Perfect Tense we use "have been" or "has been" in passive sentences.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 68) Together the old man and the young boy washed the dishes.

Select the correct passive voice:

- (a) The old man and the young boy were washing the dishes together.
- (b) The old man and the young boy together washed the dishes.

- Passive: A new computer was shown to him.
- Active: We lent Shafiq Khan some money.
- Active: We lent some money to Shafiq Khan.
- Passive: Shafiq Khan was lent some money.
- Passive: Some money was lent to Shafiq Khan.
- Active: Ali sent Sana a large bouquet of white and red roses.
- Active: Ali sent a large bouquet of white and red roses to Sana.
- Passive: Sana was sent a large bouquet of white and red roses by Ali.
- Passive: A large bouquet of white and red roses was sent to Sana by Ali.

More on Passive Voice

The passive sentence requires a verb that has an object (transitive verb). The intransitive verb does not take an object, so it does not allow the construction of a passive sentence. The following sentences show some verbs are both transitive and intransitive.

Examples:

- Transitive: My father **is reading** the newspaper.
- Passive: The newspaper **is being read** by my father.
- Intransitive: My father **is reading**.
- Transitive: They **laughed** at me.
- Passive: I **was laughed** at (by them).
- Intransitive: They **laughed**.

Sometimes, it is necessary to name the one who did the action. Not doing so can make no sense to the passive sentence. The three sentences here appear incomplete, making them necessary to have the doers that are included in the following three sentences.

Examples:

- The match was won.
- We were woken.
- That picture was drawn.
- The match was won by Liverpool.
- We were woken by thunder.
- That picture was drawn by my sister.

Notices often make use of the passive voice.

Examples:

- Guests **are advised** not to leave their belongings unattended.
- No visitors **are allowed** after 8 p.m.
- Smoking in the cinema **is strictly prohibited**.

Examples:

- **It is said that** sweets are the main culprits of obesity among children.
- **He is said to be** the leader behind the kidnapping of the President's son.
- **I got cheated** by the salesman (in place of "I **was cheated** by the salesman.").

Some verbs such as the **reflexive verb** are not used in the passive voice.

Examples:

- He would talk to himself when no one was around.
(The word **himself** is a reflexive verb.)
- Long hair really suits her.
(**Not:** She is really suited by long hair.)

Some verbs are used more frequently in the passive than in the active.

Examples:

- He **was born** with a rare skin disease.
- The species **was doomed** to extinction.

- **Passive:** The suspects will have been questioned (by the police).

Modals

Examples:

- **Active:** He should/must sell his car.
- **Passive:** His car should/must be sold (by him).

Modal continuous

Examples:

- We may be building a giant sandcastle.
- A giant sandcastle may be being built (by us).

Modal perfect

Examples:

- **Active:** The robber could have shot his victim in the head.
- **Passive:** The victim could have been shot in the head by the robber.

Imperative sentence in the active voice to passive:

An imperative sentence in the passive voice has the following form: **Let + object + be + past participle.**

- **Active:** Carry it home.
- **Passive:** Let it be carried home.
- **Active:** Do it at once.
- **Passive:** Let it be done at once.
- **Active:** Open the door.
- **Passive:** Let the door be opened.
- **Active:** Throw the ball.
- **Passive:** Let the ball be thrown.

When the active voice is in the negative, the passive voice takes the form: **Let + object + not + be + past participle.**

- **Active:** Do not beat the dog.
- **Passive:** Let the dog not be beaten.

Note that **do** is not used in the passive form.

We can begin the passive sentence with **you** if we want to put emphasis on the person addressed to.

Compare:

- **Active:** Help me.
- **Passive:** Let me be helped.
- **Passive:** You are requested to help me.
- **Active:** Learn the poem.
- **Passive:** Let the poem be learned.
- **Passive:** You are asked to learn the poem.
- **Active:** Don't touch it.
- **Passive:** Let it not be touched.
- **Passive:** You are warned not to touch it.

Note that the passive form has to begin with **you** when the object of the active verb is not mentioned.

- **Active:** Work hard.

Here the active verb does not have an object. Therefore the passive form should begin with **you**.

- **Passive:** You are advised to work hard.
- **Active:** Get out.
- **Passive:** You are ordered to get out.

Passive Sentence with Two Objects

A verb can have two possible passive voices when it takes two objects: a direct object and an indirect object.

Normally, it is the indirect object (the object that appears first in an active sentence) which becomes the subject of the passive sentence. We can however also use the direct object as the subject.

Examples:

- **Active:** The salesman showed him (indirect object) a new computer (direct object).
- **Active:** The salesman showed a new computer to him.
- **Passive:** He was shown a new computer.

- Q. 6) When I went past the hall, I noticed that the chairs _____ (arrange) for a film show.
 Q. 7) One of the workmen said that he saw a crocodile when the pool _____ (drain).
 Q. 8) I was living next to that block of flats when it _____ (construct).
 Q. 9) The storm came while the crops _____ (gather).
 Q. 10) One of the soldiers fainted while the guard of honour _____ (inspect) by a foreign Chief Minister.

EXERCISE 8.6

Use the **PAST PERFECT TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

- Example: He said the bridge _____ (repair).
 He said the bridge had been repaired.
- Q. 1) They were angry and were looking for him as they felt they _____ (lie) to.
 Q. 2) A big hole _____ (dig) in the park and nobody could tell what it's for.
 Q. 3) The villagers were glad to hear that the missing child _____ (find).
 Q. 4) The police promised to catch the escaped prisoners within three days, but after three months, none _____ (catch).
 Q. 5) The angry applicants wanted to know why they _____ (give) the wrong forms.
 Q. 6) She didn't sweep the porch because it _____ (sweep) already.
 Q. 7) The peas _____ (freeze) for months and were still fresh.
 Q. 8) This is not the first time that the tree _____ (strike) by lightning.
 Q. 9) After five defeats in a row, the team's confidence _____ badly (shake).
 Q. 10) The good striker _____ (choose) to play for his country only three times as he suffered frequent injury.

Exercise 8.7

Use the **SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: He _____ (choose) to represent the company at the funeral.
 He will be chosen to represent the company at the funeral.

- Q. 1) The police said the identity of the robbers _____ (know) fairly soon.
 Q. 2) His car _____ (leave) at the workshop tomorrow.
 Q. 3) Three representatives from our side _____ (send) to participate in the discussion.
 Q. 4) The documentary film _____ soon _____ (show) on television.
 Q. 5) From today, anybody who does not stop at the red light _____ (make) to pay a heavy fine.
 Q. 6) If nobody claims the lost property, it _____ (sell) at the end of the term.

- Q. 7) Our shop _____ (shut down) for a week for repairs and renovation.
 Q. 8) Be careful! Your hand _____ (cut) if you hold it too near to that circular saw.
 Q. 9) With two very fast runners in the race, the record _____ probably _____ (break) by one of them.
 Q. 10) I have set the alarm clock; we _____ (awaken) at six o'clock.

PRACTICE MCQ'S

- Q 1) **It is time to start the paper.**
 (a) It is time to be starting the paper.
 (b) It was time to be starting the paper.
 (c) It is time for the paper to be started.
 (d) It was time for the paper to be started.
- Q 2) **It was time to take the exam.**
 (a) It was time to taking the exam.
 (b) It was time the exam to taking.
 (c) It was time for the exam to be taking.
 (d) It was time for the exam to be taken.
- Q 3) **He has broken a new chair.**
 (a) A new chair has broken by him.
 (b) A new chair has been broken by him.
 (c) A new chair have been broken by him.
 (d) A new chair had been broken by him.
- Q 4) **Did she recognize you?**
 (a) Are you recognize by her?
 (b) Were you recognize by her?
 (c) Were you recognize by her?
 (d) Were you being recognize by her?
- Q 5) **Can the old lady cure it?**
 (a) Can it be cured by the old lady?
 (b) Could it be cured by the old lady?
 (c) Could it be curing by the old lady?
 (d) Can it be cure by the old lady?
- Q 6) **Have you accomplished the task?**
 (a) Have the task been accomplished by you?
 (b) Has the task been accomplished by you?
 (c) Had the task been accomplished by you?
 (d) Both (i) & (ii)
- Q 7) **Inform them.**
 (a) Let them inform.
 (b) Let they inform.
 (c) Let they be informed
 (d) Let them be informed.
- Q 8) **Stop.**
 (a) You are to stop
 (b) You are ordered to stop.
 (c) You are ordered to be stopping.
 (d) Not changeable.
- Q 9) **Arrest the thieves.**

LESSON NO. 8 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 8.1

Use the **SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: I _____ (given) a sweet for smiling at her.
I am given a sweet for smiling at her.

- Q. 1) Nobody _____ (allow) to go in there.
Q. 2) The paper _____ (deliver) quite early in the morning.
Q. 3) The name of the winner _____ (engrave) on the shield.
Q. 4) Those fans _____ (control) by that switch over there.
Q. 5) The tyres/tires of those Lorries _____ (pump up) carefully every week.
Q. 6) When thieves _____ (arrest) they _____ (bring) to a police station.
Q. 7) At the Olympic Games, the top three winners of each event _____ (award) medals.
Q. 8) Huge crocodiles _____ sometimes _____ (see) in that swampy area.
Q. 9) That drain _____ (clear) out regularly and all the rubbish _____ (remove).
Q. 10) _____ football matches ever _____ (play) on that pitch?

EXERCISE 8.2

Use the **PRESENT PERFECT TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: Martial law _____ (declare) in the region.
Martial law has been declared in the region.

- Q. 1) A new hospital _____ just _____ (open) by the Mayor.
Q. 2) We _____ not _____ (teach) how to do that.
Q. 3) James _____ once again _____ (bite) by a snake.
Q. 4) The corner of this page _____ (tear) by somebody.
Q. 5) Most of the land in that valley _____ already _____ (develop) for settlement.
Q. 6) The old building off Market Road _____ (tear down).
Q. 7) I can't find my old shoes. _____ they _____ (throw) away?
Q. 8) _____ the new dam _____ (complete) yet?
Q. 9) _____ you _____ (tell) about the new timetable?
Q. 10) _____ you all _____ (inoculate) against cholera?

EXERCISE 8.3

Use the **PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: Tommy _____ (groom) for a top managerial position.

Tommy is being groomed for a top managerial position.

- Q. 1) You can't use the car now. It _____ (repair).
Q. 2) He _____ (talk) about for abusing his wife.

- Q. 3) My father _____ (treat) for diabetes.
Q. 4) Our house _____ (paint) now.
Q. 5) "I wonder if I _____ (cheat)," I thought to myself as I gave the man the money.
Q. 6) A new road _____ (widen) near our house.
Q. 7) The cup final _____ (play) at the national stadium.
Q. 8) We think twenty or thirty workers _____ (dismiss) unless business improves.
Q. 9) Peter _____ (keep) in the dark about the whole matter.
Q. 10) My cousin _____ (train) as an electrician for his new job.

EXERCISE 8.4

Use the **SIMPLE PAST TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: A valuable painting _____ (steal) from the museum.

A valuable painting was stolen from the museum.

- Q. 1) Our team _____ (beat) in the final.
Q. 2) I think it _____ (do) sometime during the night.
Q. 3) The sandwiches _____ soon _____ (eat).
Q. 4) The spare parts _____ (want) urgently so they _____ (fly) in from the supplier.
Q. 5) These books _____ (borrow) from the boys in another class.
Q. 6) The injured man _____ (carry) to an ambulance.
Q. 7) The thief _____ (chase) by a crowd of angry people.
Q. 8) She _____ (marry) on Saturday.
Q. 9) Most of these stamps _____ (collect) by my brother when he was much younger.
Q. 10) The blackboard _____ (clean) at the end of the previous lesson.

EXERCISE 8.5

Use the **PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE** of the verbs in bracket for the following passive sentences.

Example: During his stay at his uncle's farm, he _____ (force) to feed the pigs.

During his stay at his uncle's farm, he was being forced to feed the pigs.

- Q. 1) When we arrived at their house we saw that the whole house _____ (rewire).
Q. 2) The ship _____ (unload) when we reached the docks.
Q. 3) He could not use his car yesterday because it _____ (service).
Q. 4) A tiger escaped when it _____ (move) from one zoo to another.
Q. 5) A huge crowd gathered at the office when the repossessed houses _____ (resell) at a cheaper rate.

(c) The dishes were washed by the old man and the young boy together.

(d) Together, the old man and the young boy wash the dishes.

HINT: In Past Indefinite Tense we use "was/were" in passive voice sentences.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 69) Communication technology has brought a tremendous revolution in modern societies.

Select the correct passive voice.

(a) A tremendous revolution has been brought in communication technology in modern societies.

(b) In modern societies a tremendous revolution has been brought in communication technology.

(c) A tremendous revolution has brought in communication technology in modern societies

(d) Communication technology has tremendous revolution brought in modern societies

HINT: "has/have" is changed into "have/has been" to make passive voice.

ANSWER: (a)

2015

Q 70) Will you give me your bicycle?

Passive form of the sentence is:

(a) Will your bicycle be given to me by you?

(b) Shall you be given to me by your bicycle?

(c) I shall be given your bicycle by you?

(d) Your bicycle will be given to me by you?

ANSWER: (a)

Q 71) She does not wash clothes on Fridays:

Passive form of the sentence is:

(a) Clothes are not being washed by her on Fridays.

(b) Clothes were not washed by her on Fridays.

(c) Clothes were not being washed by her on Fridays.

(d) Clothes are not washed by her on Fridays.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 72) His bad friends will ruin him.

Passive form of the sentence is:

(a) He will ruin his bad friends.

(b) He is ruined by his bad friends.

(c) He will be ruined by his bad friends

(d) He is being ruined by his bad friends.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 73) I keep the butter in the fridge.

Select the correct passive voice:

(a) In the fridge the butter is kept by me.

(b) By me is the butter kept in the fridge.

(c) The butter is kept by me in the fridge.

(d) Kept in the fridge by me is the butter.

ANSWER: (c)

2013

Q 74) Fire destroyed the top floor of the building.

Select the correct passive voice:

(a) The top floor of the building got destroyed by fire.

(b) By fire was destroyed the top floor of the building.

(c) Destroyed by fire was the top floor of the building.

(d) The top floor of the building was destroyed by fire.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 75) The police arrested him for dangerous driving.

Select the correct passive voice:

(a) He was arrested for dangerous driving by the police.

(b) He was arrested by the police for dangerous driving.

(c) For dangerous driving he was arrested by the police.

(d) By the police was he arrested for dangerous driving.

ANSWER: (b)

- Q 40) We would invite them.
(d) A test could be taken by us.
(a) They would be invited by us.

- (b) They would invite by us.
(c) They would being invited by us.
(d) The would been invited by us.

LESSON NO. 8 EXERCISE MCQS

S.No.	Answers 8.1	Answers 8.2	Answers 8.3	Answer 8.4	Answers 8.5	Answers 8.6
1	is allowed	Has, been opened	is being repaired.	was beaten	was being rewired.	had been lied
2	is delivered	have, been taught	is being talked	was done	was being unloaded	had been dug
3	is engraved	has, been bitten	is being treated	were, eaten.	was, being serviced.	had been found.
4	are controlled	has been torn	is being painted	were wanted, were flown	was being moved	had been caught.
5	are pumped, up	has, been developed	am being cheated	were borrowed	were being resold	had been given
6	are arrested, are brought	has been torn down.	is being widened	was carried .	were being arranged	had been swept
7	are awarded	Have, been thrown	is being played	was chased	was being drained.	had been frozen
8	Are, seen	Has, been completed	are being dismissed	was married	was being constructed.	had been struck
9	is cleared, is removed.	Have, been told	is being kept	were collected	were being gathered.	had been shaken
10	Are, played	Have, been inoculated	is being trained	was cleaned	was being inspected	had been chosen

PRACTICE MCQ'S SOLUTION KEYS

S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer
1	c	11	d	21	d	31	a
2	d	12	a	22	b	32	c
3	b	13	c	23	c	33	a
4	c	14	b	24	c	34	a
5	a	15	d	25	d	35	d
6	b	16	a	26	a	36	a
7	c	17	b	27	a	37	b
8	b	18	a	28	b	38	c
9	b	19	a	29	c	39	d
10	d	20	a	30	d	40	a

- (c) A bunch of flowers were given to him by the students.
- (d) Both (i) & (ii)
- Q 26) He should inform the guests.**
- (a) The guests should be informed by him.
- (b) The guests should being inform by him.
- (c) The guests should be inform by him.
- (d) The guests should being inform by him.
- Q 27) They called off this afternoon's meeting.**
- (a) This afternoon's meeting was called off by them.
- (b) This afternoon's meeting is called off by them.
- (c) That afternoon's meeting is being called by them.
- (d) This afternoon's meeting was being called off by them.
- Q 28) The filling station was giving away free gas.**
- (a) Free gas was giving away by the filling station.
- (b) Free gas was being given away by the filling station.
- (c) Free gas was given away by the fill station.
- (d) Free gas was given by the filling station away.
- Q 29) The students handed in their papers and left the room.**
- (a) Their papers were handed and left the room by the students.
- (b) Their papers was handed in by the students and left the room.
- (c) Their papers were handed in by the students and left the room.
- (d) Their papers were being handed in by the students and left the room.
- Q 30) The crane has picked up the entire house.**
- (a) The entire house has picked up by the crane.
- (b) The entire house have been picked up by the crane.
- (c) The entire house had been picked up the crane.
- (d) The entire house has been picked up by the crane.
- Q 31) Ali will point out the major historical sites.**
- (a) The major historical sites will be pointed pit by Ali.
- (b) The major historical sites would be pointed out by Ali.
- (c) The major historical sites will have pointed by Ali.

- (d) The major historical sites will have been pointed by Ali.
- Q 32) We had put away money for our retirement.**
- (a) Money had been put away for our retirement by us.
- (b) Money has been put away by us for our retirement.
- (c) Money had been put away by us for our retirement.
- (d) Money had been putting away by us for our retirement.
- Q 33) She will have read over the homework.**
- (a) The homework will have been read over by her.
- (b) The homework would have been read over by her.
- (c) The homework will has been read over by her.
- (d) The homework will have been read by her over.
- Q 34) He has to do work.**
- (a) He has work to be done.
- (b) He had work to be done.
- (c) He had to done work.
- (d) Not changeable.
- Q 35) I have examples to write.**
- (a) I have examples to be wrote.
- (b) I have examples to be writing.
- (c) I have examples to be write.
- (d) I have examples to be written.
- Q 36) I can write a good book.**
- (a) A good book can be written by me.
- (b) A good book could written by me.
- (c) A good book could be written by me.
- (d) A good book can be write by me.
- Q 37) They might cut the trees.**
- (a) The trees might cut by them.
- (b) The trees might be cut by them.
- (c) The trees may be cutting by them.
- (d) The trees might be cutting by them.
- Q 38) We ought to respect our parents.**
- (a) Our parents ought to respect by us.
- (b) Our parents ought to be respecting by us.
- (c) Our parents ought to be respected by us.
- (d) Our parents ought to being respected by us,
- Q 39) We could take a test.**
- (a) A test can be taken by us.
- (b) A test could take by us.
- (c) A test could be take by us.

- (a) Let the thieves be arrest.
 (b) Let the thieves be arrested.
 (c) Let the thieves being arrest.
 (d) Let the thieves are arresting.
- Q 10) Water fills the tub.**
 (a) The tub is filled by water.
 (b) The tub was filled by water.
 (c) The tub was filled with water.
 (d) The tub is filled with water.
- Q 11) The smell disgusted me.**
 (a) I am disgusted by the smell.
 (b) I was disgusted by the smell.
 (c) I am disgusted with the smell.
 (d) I was disgusted with the smell.
- Q 12) This book contains twenty chapters.**
 (a) Twenty chapters are contained in this book.
 (b) Twenty chapters is contained in this book.
 (c) Twenty chapters are contained by this book.
 (d) Twenty chapter were contained in by this book.
- Q 13) The teacher knew the talented students.**
 (a) The talented students are known by the teacher.
 (b) The talented students were known by the teacher.
 (c) The talented students were known to the teacher.
 (d) The talented students are known to the teacher.
- Q 14) The beautiful scenery had astonished them.**
 (a) They had been astonished by the beautiful scenery.
 (b) They had been astonished at the beautiful scenery.
 (c) They had been astonishing at the beautiful scenery.
 (d) They have been astonished at the beautiful scenery.
- Q 15) The result will have rejoiced her.**
 (a) She will have rejoiced by the result.
 (b) She will have been rejoiced by the result.
 (c) She would have been rejoiced at the result.
 (d) She will have been rejoiced at the result.
- Q 16) The crowd thronged the streets.**
 (a) The streets were thronged with the crowd.
 (b) The streets was thronged with the crowd.
 (c) The streets were being thronged by the

- crowd.
 (d) The streets were thronged by the crowd.
- Q 17) When will they announce the results?**
 (a) When the result will be announced by them?
 (b) When will the results be announced by them?
 (c) When would the result announced by them?
 (d) When will the result being announced by them?
- Q 18) Who published this novel?**
 (a) By whom was this novel published?
 (b) By who was this novel published?
 (c) By whom this novel was published?
 (d) By who this novel was being published?
- Q 19) What did he say?**
 (a) What was said by him?
 (b) What is said by him?
 (c) What said is by him?
 (d) What was being said by him?
- Q 20) Whom did you invite?**
 (a) Who was invited by you?
 (b) Who was being invited by you?
 (c) Whom was invited by you?
 (d) Who were being invited by you?
- Q 21) He told me a stranger story.**
 (a) A stranger story was told to me by him.
 (b) I was told a strange story by him.
 (c) I am told a strange story by him.
 (d) Both (i) & (ii)
- Q 22) Buy a new mobile.**
 (a) Let a new mobile is bought.
 (b) Let a new mobile be bought.
 (c) Let a new mobile be buy.
 (d) Let a new mobile being bought.
- Q 23) Your behavior will annoy them.**
 (a) They will annoy by your behavior.
 (b) They will be annoyed by your behavior.
 (c) They will be annoyed at your behavior.
 (d) They would be annoyed at your behavior.
- Q 24) The lecture has satisfied us.**
 (a) We have been satisfied by the lecture.
 (b) We had been satisfied by the lecture.
 (c) We have been satisfied with the lecture.
 (d) We had been satisfied with the lecture.
- Q 25) The students gave him a bunch of flowers.**
 (a) He was given a bunch a flower by the students.
 (b) A bunch of flowers was given to him by the students.

Direct Speech

Indirect Speech

Will	Would
Can	Could
May	Might
Shall	Should
Must	Must
ought to	ought to
used to	used to

Examples:

- "I **will** be a vegetarian."
- She said (that) she **would** be a vegetarian.
- "I **can** swim like a fish."
- He said he **could** swim like a fish."
- "We **may** start a new religion."
- They said they **might** start a new religion.
- "I **shall** be judged only by God."
- My grandfather said he **should** be judged only by God.
- "You **must** behave yourself."
- The teacher told me I **must** behave myself.
- "You **ought to** stop talking to yourself."
- My mother said I **ought to** stop talking to myself.
- "I **used to** have many girlfriends."
- My father confessed that he **used to** have many girlfriends.
- If the past form of modal verbs **would, could, might, and should** is used in the direct speech, we do not change them in the indirect speech.

Examples:

- Annie said, "I **would** hate to miss the puppet show **tonight**."
- Annie said she **would** hate to miss the puppet show **that night**.
- Joe said, "We **could** go for a drive after lunch **tomorrow**."
- Joe suggested that they **could** go for a drive after lunch **the next day**.
- Jennifer said to me, "I **might** ask you to do me a favour **this weekend**?"
- Jennifer asked if I **might** do her a favour **that weekend**.
- Bob said, "You **should** be ashamed of yourselves for what you did **last night**."
- Bob said that they **should** be ashamed of themselves for what they did **the night before**.

Reporting Questions

When a question is reported, it becomes an indirect question. An indirect question does not end with a question mark; it ends with a full stop (period). We do not use quotation marks in indirect questions.

Examples:

- The reporter asked, "When **is** the rain going to stop?"
- The reporter asked the weatherman when the rain **was** going to stop.
- The police officer asked him, "Where **were** you last Sunday?"
- The police officer asked him where he **was** the previous Sunday.

We often use **if** in indirect questions.

Examples:

- "Do you believe in one god or many gods?"
- His uncle asked **if** I believe in one god or many gods.
- My neighbour asked me, "Do you feel lonely without your wife and children?"
- My neighbour asked me **if** I felt lonely without my wife and children.

Examples:

We can use **whether or whether or not** instead of **if**.

Simple Past/ Continuous	Past Perfect/ Continuous
"I ate the whole piece."	He said that he had eaten the whole piece.
Past continuous	Past perfect continuous
"I was dreaming about you."	She told him she had been dreaming about him.
Simple future	Future in the past
"I shall never forget you."	He told me that he would never forget me.

Pronouns from first and second persons to third person.

Direct Speech - First/second Person

"I have cut my finger."

"You have to get ready to leave."

Indirect speech - third person

He said that he had cut his finger.

He told them that they had to get ready to leave.

Sometimes, the direct speech that we want to report comes in more than one sentence.

Examples:

Direct: "Don't fight with your sister," my mother said. "Get on with your school homework."

Indirect: My mother told me not to fight with my sister and to get on with my school homework.

Direct: "Be quiet! I'm watching television."

Indirect: She told us to be quiet while she was watching television.

In most cases, when the reporting verb is in the present or future tense, we do not change the tenses of the verbs in the indirect speech.

Examples:

Direct: "I'm tired," she says almost every evening. (Simple present)

Indirect: Almost every evening, she says (that) she is tired.

Direct: "They are late again," she has told us. (Present perfect)

Indirect: She has told us (that) they are late again.

Direct: I will tell him, "The shop closes at 5.30." (Simple future).

Indirect: I will tell him (that) the shop closes at 5.30.

If in direct speech, a statement is always true or an action is still continuing, we do not change the tense when converting it into indirect speech, as a change of tense might give the wrong meaning.

Examples:

Direct: He told us. "The Earth is round."

Indirect: He told us that the Earth is round.

Direct: She said, "My brother is living in Australia."

Indirect: She said that her brother is living in Australia. (She said that her brother was living in Australia would indicate that her brother is no longer living in Australia which is not true.)

Changes in Indirect Speech

We make changes in time, places, determiners, etc. when reporting the direct speech.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Now	Then
Today	that day
Tonight	that night
last night	the previous night, the night before
Yesterday	the previous day, the day before
Tomorrow	the next day, the day after
next week	the following week
Here	There
this/these	that/those
this (determiner)	The

Modal verbs in indirect speech

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

KEY POINTS

Indirect Speech

The subsections to this lesson are:

- Direct Speech or Quoted Speech
- Indirect Speech or Reported Speech
- Changing Direct Speech to Indirect Speech
- Changes in Indirect Speech
- Reporting Questions

Direct speech (quoted speech) and indirect speech (reported speech) are the two ways to report what someone else has said.

Direct Speech or Quoted Speech

Direct speech is using the actual words that someone has said. We do not make changes to the quotation marks. We use them to enclose the spoken words,

"Be careful! Keep your eyes open. See where you are going," she said.

This is the direct speech. We merely repeat the exact words used by the speaker and keep the exact words within quotation marks.

Examples:

- "Be careful! Keep your eyes open. See where you are going," she said.
- She said, "Be careful! Keep your eyes open. See where you are going."
- "Be careful!" she said, "Keep your eyes open. See where you are going."

Indirect Speech or Reported Speech

We use our own words to report what someone has said without using quotation marks. We change the tense, but not always, in the reported speech because the spoken words already occur in the past by the time we report them. We make other changes as well.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
"Follow me," she told him.	She told him to follow her.
"I am leaving my husband," she said.	She said (that) she was leaving her husband.
He said, "Stop humming the national anthem."	He told me to stop humming the national anthem.

The above table shows the past tense used in the indirect speech. In most cases, the tense used in indirect speech follows the tense of the reporting verb. As all the reporting verbs (told, said) are in the past tense, so the words in the indirect speech are also in the past tense. We repeat the pronouns (she, he) because no changes are required.

Changing Direct Speech to Indirect Speech

When we change direct to indirect speech, we usually change the tense of the verbs from the present forms to the past forms. The pronouns are affected too.

Tense of the verbs from the present forms to the past forms.

Simple Present	Simple Past
"I am homesick."	She told me that she was homesick.
Present continuous	Past continuous
"I am enjoying myself."	He told us he was enjoying himself.
Present perfect	Past perfect
"I have taken many photos."	She said that she had taken many photos.
Present perfect continuous.	Past perfect continuous
"I have been having a wonderful time."	He said that he had been having a wonderful time.

- (b) He advised us to protest
(c) If he were me, he would protest
(d) If he had been I, he would have protested

HINT: Here the conditional structure of a sentence is given in the reported speech.

ANSWER: (d)

LESSON NO. 9 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 9.1

Convert the following in direct speech into indirect speech.

- Q. 1) "Hurry up!" he shouted to us.
- Q. 2) She asked John, "Please turn on the light."
- Q. 3) "Don't be late again," the boss warned him.
- Q. 4) Someone called out to him, "Be careful!"
- Q. 5) "Be careful when you come to the bend," Nick told his brother.
- Q. 6) Her mother said to her, "Pick the bag up and put it on the table."
- Q. 7) "Buy some bananas for me," my father told me.
- Q. 8) "Buy some apples for me when you go to the market tomorrow," her sister told her.
- Q. 9) "Go and see Tim," my brother told me.
- Q. 10) "Go and ask Sid to lend me his bicycle," my sister said to me.
- Q. 11) "Switch on the fan," my brother told me. "Bring me a glass of water."
- Q. 12) "Don't fall asleep," my mother reminded me. "You have to go and help your father."
- Q. 13) "Don't waste your money on bets at the races," his father told him. "Save some each month."
- Q. 14) "Ask Sid how much he wants for his bicycle," a friend asked me.
- Q. 15) "Show this man where the main office is," Mr. Black said to me.
- Q. 16) "Write to Uncle Peter and thank him for the present," my mother told Mary.
- Q. 17) "You are behaving badly," her aunt scolded her.
- Q. 18) "One member fell and hurt his leg quite badly," he informed the group leader.
- Q. 19) The trainer instructed them, "This is the way to do it and try to do it by yourself."
- Q. 20) The teacher said to the pupils, "Be careful to look both ways when you cross the road."
- Q. 21) "Enjoy yourself at the party," my mother said to my sister.
- Q. 22) "Lend me your book for a moment, please," Tom asked me.
- Q. 23) "When you see Bob, tell him that Joe is looking for him," my brother said to me.
- Q. 24) "Don't forget to collect my watch from the shop," my sister reminded me.
- Q. 25) "Let the bird go," my sister said. "Don't put it in a cage."

EXERCISE 9.2

Convert the following in direct speech into indirect speech.

- Q. 1) He said, "I'm just going to the market. I shan't be long."
- Q. 2) "I can't find the shop you told me about," his sister complained to him.
- Q. 3) "I don't like the pattern on that dress very much, so I'm not going to buy it," she confided in her sister.
- Q. 4) "Why are you late again?," they asked me.
- Q. 5) "I heard you were discharged from the hospital yesterday," John said.
- Q. 6) "You will be late if you don't hurry up," my mother said to her.
- Q. 7) George called, "I have left my books behind at your place."
- Q. 8) "I forgot to do my homework last night," he told the teacher.
- Q. 9) "George will forget his bag again unless you remind him," I said to my sister.
- Q. 10) He said, "It's raining and I have forgotten my umbrella. Could you share your umbrella with me please?"
- Q. 11) She said, "I hate it when it starts snowing just as I am setting out."
- Q. 12) She said, "I think it's all your fault that I get into this mess."
- Q. 13) Someone said, "The train will have arrived by seven o'clock."
- Q. 14) "I'll come if I can," she promised us.
- Q. 15) She told me, "I'll buy a new watch for you when I go to Bangkok but I don't know when."
- Q. 16) Tom told the visitor, "My mother is not at home and I don't know where she is now."
- Q. 17) "I would love to go with you," Janet said to Paul. "but I'm afraid I can't because my uncle is arriving in a few minutes."
- Q. 18) "Will you stop practicing your violin? The screeching noise gives me a headache," my father told me one evening.
- Q. 19) Mickey said to Ray and Roy, "You are out of your mind if you believe what Mike said this morning."
- Q. 20) Mrs. White said, "There were no pineapples at the market today so I bought some oranges instead."

EXERCISE 9.3

Convert the following in direct speech into indirect speech.

- Q. 1) She admitted, "I steal money from my employer."
- Q. 2) One of the judges declared, "This is the best chocolate cake I have ever tasted."

- (a) The assistant told that he is busy and asked me to leave a message.
 (b) The assistant told that he was busy and ask me to leave a message.
 (c) The assistant told that he was busy and asked be to leave a message.
 (d) The assistant told that he was busy and asked me to leave a message?

ANSWER: (c)

- Q 12) She said "I passed the examination long ago"
 (a) She said that had passed the examination long ago
 (b) She said that she had passed the examination long before
 (c) She told she had passed the examination long before
 (d) She asked that she had passed the examination long ago.

ANSWER: (b)

- Q 13) She said "I passed the examination long ago"
 (a) She said that had passed the examination long ago
 (b) She said that she had passed the examination long before
 (c) She told she had passed the examination long before
 (d) She asked that she had passed the examination long ago.

ANSWER: (b)

2016

- Q 14) "I am disappointed that you feel you have to lie to me, Jason," said his father.
Select the correct indirect speech:
 (a) His father said to Jason that he is sorry to feel disappointed that he has to lie to me.
 (b) Jason's father said to him that he was sorry that he felt he had to lie to me.
 (c) Jason's father said that he was disappointed to know that he felt he had to lie to him.
 (d) Jason's father was disappointed and sorry that he had to lie to him and that he felt it.

HINT: In option (a) there is no change of Tense, Whereas in option (b) the Pronoun "me" is incorrect.

ANSWER: (d)

- Q 15) Anwar said, "Naveed must go tomorrow".
Select the correct indirect speech.
 (a) Anwar declared that Naveed must go the following day.
 (b) Anwar exclaimed that Naveed would have to go the following day.
 (c) Anwar said that Naveed would have to go the following day
 (d) Anwar said that Naveed shall go the following day.

HINT: The reported speech is in "imperative" form,

(Imperative sentence)

ANSWER: (a)

2013

- Q 16) He said to me, "Why have you come late?"
Indirect form of the sentence is:
 (a) He asked me why I had come late.
 (b) He asked me why I came late.
 (c) He asked me why I have come late.
 (d) He told me as to why I had come late.

ANSWER: (a)

- Q 17) He said to me, "What a stupid fellow you are!"
Indirect form of the sentence is:
 (a) He exclaimed that I was very stupid fellow
 (b) He told me that you were a stupid fellow
 (c) He exclaimed that what a stupid fellow I was.
 (d) He did tell me that I had been a stupid fellow.

ANSWER: (a)

- Q 18) He said, "May this child live long!"
Indirect form of the sentence is:
 (a) He prayed that that child may live long.
 (b) He prayed that that child will live long.
 (c) He prayed that that child might live long.
 (d) He said that that child might live long.

ANSWER: (c)

2013

- Q 19) "Have you got a computer?" she said.
Select the correct indirect speech:
 (a) She wanted to find a whether I have a computer.
 (b) She wanted to know whether I had a computer.
 (c) She wanted to know if I could use a computer.
 (d) She was interested to know about my computer.

ANSWER: (b)

- Q 20) "I saw him yesterday," she said.
Select the correct in direct speech:
 (a) She told that she had seen him yesterday.
 (b) She said that she had seen him the day before.
 (c) She told that she could see him the previous day.
 (d) She said that she would see him the day before.

ANSWER: (b)

- Q 21) "I have been to Spain," he told me.
Select indirect speech:
 (a) He told me that he could visit Spain
 (b) He told me that he has visited Spain.
 (c) He told me that he had been to Spain.
 (d) He told me that he has been to Spain.

ANSWER: (c)

2011

- Q 22) He said, "If I were you, I would protest." can be indirectly reported as:
 (a) If he had been me, he would have protested

They asked whether I believe in one god or many gods.

My sister asked me whether / whether or not I was sad that I had no friend.

ETEA PAST PAPERS (LESSON NO. 9 DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH)

2018

Q 1) She said, "What a lovely dress it is."

[Choose the correct indirect speech:]

- (a) She exclaimed that it is a lovely dress.
- (b) She exclaimed that it was a lovely dress.
- (c) She exclaimed that what a lovely dress it was.
- (d) She exclaimed what a lovely dress it is.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 2) The teacher said, "Amna, watch your steps." [Choose the correct indirect speech:]

- (a) The teacher ordered Amna that She should watch her steps.
- (b) The teacher ordered Amna to watch your steps.
- (c) The teacher ordered Amna to watch her steps.
- (d) The teacher requested Amna to watch your steps.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 3) He said to me, "traitor".

[Choose the correct indirect speech:]

- (a) He said to me that I was a traitor.
- (b) He told me that I have been a traitor.
- (c) He called me a traitor.
- (d) He exclaimed with anger that I was a traitor.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 4) He said, "What is the matter?"

[Choose the correct indirect speech:]

- a. He said what the matter was.
- b. He asked what the matter was.
- c. He enquired that what was the matter.
- d. He asked that what the matter had been.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 5) He said, "I will pass the exam with good marks".

- (a) He said that he would pass the exam with good marks.
- (b) He said with pride that he will pass the exam with good marks.
- (c) He told that I would pass the exam with good marks.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 6) The cashier says to them, "have you counted money". (choose the correct indirect speech).

- (a) The cashier told them that they have counted the money.
- (b) The cashier says to them if they have counted the money.

(c) The cashier says to them if they had counted the money.

(d) The cashier asks them if they have counted the money.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 7) The passenger said to the taxi driver, thank you. (Choose the correct indirect speech)

- (a) The passenger said to the taxi driver thank you.
- (b) The passenger said thank you to the taxi driver.
- (c) The passenger tanked the taxi driver.
- (d) The passenger thanks the taxi driver.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 8) The teacher said to the students, "You can go out for a short break". (Choose the correct indirect speech)

- (a) The teacher asked the students to go out for a short break.
- (b) The teacher allowed the students to go out of a short break.
- (c) The teacher requested the students to go out for a short break.
- (d) The teacher ordered the students to go out for a short break.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 9) He said, "I do not want to see any of you; go away."

- (a) He said that he did not wish to see any of you and go away.
- (a) He said that they did not wish to see any of us and went away.
- (c) He said that he did not wish to see any of them and went away.
- (a) He said that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 10) He asked me what my name was and what I did.

- (a) He said to me, "What was my name and what did I do?"
- (b) He said to me, "What is your name and what do you do?"
- (c) He said to me, "What my name was and what did"
- (d) He said to me, "What his name was and what did he do?"

ANSWER: (b)

Q 11) "He is busy, would you like to leave a message?" said the assistant.

- Q. 18) "Did you ever live in Washington?" Peter asked his friend.
- Q. 19) The policeman told the inspector, "I arrested two men who tried to steal something from a car."

PRACTICE MCQ'S

- Q 1) **The scientists said, "The sun gives light".**
(a) The scientists said that the sun gives light.
(b) The scientists said that the sun give light.
(c) The scientists said that the sun was giving light.
(d) The scientists said that the sun is giving light.
- Q 2) **The old man said, "The earth is a planet".**
(a) The old man said that the earth is being a planet.
(b) The old man said that the earth is a planet.
(c) The old man said that the earth has been a planet.
(d) The old man said that the earth was a planet.
- Q 3) **He says, "They are playing in the ground".**
(a) He says that they were playing in the ground.
(b) He says that they are playing in the ground.
(c) He says that they are being playing in the ground.
(d) He says that they were playing in the ground.
- Q 4) **They say, "We have been playing".**
(a) They say that we have been playing.
(b) They say that we had been playing.
(c) They say that they had been playing.
(d) They say that they have been playing.
- Q 5) **I will say, "It is raining".**
(a) I would say that it is raining.
(b) I will say that it was raining.
(c) I will say that it is being raining.
(d) I will say that it is raining.
- Q 6) **We shall say, "He was attempting the paper".**
(a) We shall say that he was being attempting the paper.
(b) We shall say that he had attempted the paper.
(c) We shall say that he was attempting the paper.
(d) We shall say that he had been attempting the paper.
- Q 7) **They said, "The boys are learning new things".**
(a) They said that the boys were learning new things.
(b) They said that boys are being learning new things.
(c) They said that the boys had been learning new things.
(d) They said that the boys are learning new things.
- Q 8) **Mother said, "May you live long".**
(a) Mother wished that I might live long.
(b) Mother wished that I may live long.
(c) Mother wished that may I live long.
(d) Mother wished that might I live long.
- Q 9) **The teacher said, "May all the students qualify the test".**
(a) The teacher desired that may all the students qualify the test.
(b) The teacher desired that might all the students qualify the test.
(c) The teacher desired that all the students might qualify the test.
(d) The teacher desired that all the students may qualify the test.
- Q 10) **The old man said, "would that I were a stout man".**
(a) The old man wished that would that I were a stout man.
(b) The old man wished would that I were a stout man.
(c) The old man wished that I had been a stout man.
(d) The old man wished that he had been a stout man.
- Q 11) **The poor man said, "Would that I were a millionaire".**
(a) The poor man prayed that would that I were a millionaire.
(b) The poor man prayed would that I were a millionaire.
(c) The poor man prayed that he had been a millionaire.
(d) The poor man prayer that I had been a millionaire.
- Q 12) **The coach said, "Would that she had struggled hard".**
(a) The coach said that would that she had struggled hard.
(b) The coach wished that she would have struggled hard.
(c) The coach wished that she had been struggled hard.
(d) The coach wished that she had struggled hard.
- Q 13) **The students said, "would that we had attempted all the MCQ's".**

- Q. 3) We were told, "You are too young to register for National Service."
- Q. 4) She said, "We often quarrel but we always make it up soon after."
- Q. 5) Peter told me, "My family will be moving to San Diego next month."
- Q. 6) The army officer said, "The whole town was taken by rebel forces during the night."
- Q. 7) "You have put on a lot of weight since I last saw you," Sue told her brother.
- Q. 8) "Don't go away until the clerk has given you a receipt," my father said to me.
- Q. 9) "I shall be starting my sewing lessons next month," Mary told her mother.
- Q. 10) "The trip has been postponed to the end of the month," I told Jim.
- Q. 11) "All the tickets for today's show have sold out. We will go another day," Jane said to her sister.
- Q. 12) Grace said to me, "I know where Ray is. He's down by the river, fishing."
- Q. 13) Mike said to me, "I can post the letters for you. I'm going to the Post Office tomorrow."
- Q. 14) "Let's go to Hong Kong," Lucy suggested to her brothers. "There's a water carnival on this weekend."
- Q. 15) The old man advised the boys, "Don't go swimming in the river. There are crocodiles in it."
- Q. 16) The teacher said, "There will be a test next Monday. Anybody who doesn't get at least half marks will be in trouble."
- Q. 17) Mr. Williams told his wife, "I'll probably be late tonight. The meeting will take quite a long time. Don't wait up for me."
- Q. 18) The teacher told them, "Go and see your principal. He will tell you what to do."
- Q. 19) My father reminded us, "Your cousins will arrive early tomorrow morning. They are driving down from Liverpool."
- Q. 20) He said to us, "I'll wait for you at the bus station. Don't be late."

EXERCISE 9.4

When changing direct speech to indirect/reported speech, it's not always necessary to change the tenses. Tenses remain the same when reported speech is made immediately/shortly after the direct speech, or the situation is a fact or true.

Convert the following direct statements into indirect speech without changing the tenses of the verbs.

Example: The big boy told the small boy, "The sun rises in the east."

The big boy told the small boy that the sun rises in the east. (It's a fact that the sun rises in the east.)

- Q. 1) He said, "My brother is working in the Post Office."

- Q. 2) "It is still raining hard," my sister has just told me.
- Q. 3) Bob told him, "I don't want to buy your car."
- Q. 4) "I work hard every day of the year," he always tells us.
- Q. 5) He never says, "I'm sorry" to anybody in his life.
- Q. 6) She will probably reply, "I'm very sorry but I'm too busy to go to the cinema with you."
- Q. 7) He has often said to us, "I'm tired of living in this noisy city."
- Q. 8) My father has warned me, "There are a couple of cobras somewhere in the hedge."
- Q. 9) Whenever his children ask him for money he will say, "I haven't got any."
- Q. 10) "The train arrives at one o'clock," Nick told us.

EXERCISE 9.5

Change each of the following speeches into an Indirect or Reported Speech using the Past Perfect tense. (A past perfect tense is formed by using 'had' and a past participle.)

Example: She said, "Mum has just cooked a great meal." She said that mum had just cooked a great meal.

- Q. 1) The boy told her mum, "The washing-line has broken."
- Q. 2) My brother said, "Some birds have eaten the bananas."
- Q. 3) "I did not read your letter," she told her sister.
- Q. 4) He complained to the supervisor, "Nobody came to help me."
- Q. 5) The police officer asked the crowd, "What went wrong?"
- Q. 6) Peter asked Mary, "Have you finished reading the magazine?"
- Q. 7) "I have never come across a person as selfish as you," she told off her boyfriend.
- Q. 8) The father shouted, "Who left the fridge door open?"
- Q. 9) "Someone brought a cat to the cinema" a voice said.
- Q. 10) He told them, "The game hasn't started because some of the players haven't arrived."
- Q. 11) The stranger asked, "Has the train from Birmingham arrived yet?"
- Q. 12) "Have you bought some berries for me?" I asked my mother.
- Q. 13) The man in the bookshop told me, "We have ordered your book but we haven't received it yet."
- Q. 14) The teacher told his parent, "Ryan cut his chin playing hockey. I've taken him to hospital."
- Q. 15) He asked me, "How did you find my address?"
- Q. 16) The police questioned him, "When did you last see the deceased?"
- Q. 17) She asked him, "How much did you pay for the pony?"

- (a) I asked what he was doing the next day.
 (b) I asked what he was doing tomorrow.
 (c) I asked what was he doing tomorrow.
 (d) I asked what was he doing the next day.
- Q 38) The director said, "how are you?"**
 (a) The director interrogated how I was.
 (b) The director interrogated that how I was.
 (c) The director interrogated how was I.
 (d) The director interrogated that how was I.
- Q 39) We said, "When will they arrive?"**
 (a) We wanted to know when they would arrive.
 (b) We wanted to know that when they would arrive.
 (c) We wanted to know when would they arrive.
 (d) We wanted to know if when would they arrive.
- Q 40) The teacher said "This book is very interesting".**

- (a) The teacher said that this book was very interesting.
 (b) The teacher said that that book was very interesting.
 (c) The teacher said that the book is very interesting.
 (d) The teacher said that the book was very interesting.
- Q 41) The carpenter said "These chairs were expensive".**
 (a) The carpenter said that that chairs were expensive.
 (b) The carpenter said that those chairs had been expensive.
 (c) The carpenter said that the chairs had been expensive.
 (d) The carpenter said that the chairs have been expensive.

LESSON NO. 9 EXERCISE ANSWERS

ANSWERS 9.1

- Q. 1) He shouted to us to hurry up.
 Q. 2) She asked John to turn on the light.
 Q. 3) The boss warned him not to be late again.
 Q. 4) Someone called out to him to be careful.
 Q. 5) Nick told his brother to be careful when he came to the bend.
 Q. 6) Her mother told her to pick the bag up and put it on the table.
 Q. 7) My father told me to buy some bananas for him.
 Q. 8) Her sister told her to buy some apples for her when she went to the market the next day.
 Q. 9) My brother told me to go and see Tim.
 Q. 10) My sister told me to go and ask Sid to lend her his bicycle.
 Q. 11) My brother told me to switch on the fan and to bring him a glass of water.
 Q. 12) My mother reminded me not to fall asleep. She said I had to go and help my father.
 Q. 13) My father told me not to waste my money on bets at the races and to save some each month.
 Q. 14) A friend asked me to ask Sid how much he wanted for his bicycle.
 Q. 15) Mr. Black told me to show that man where the main office was.
 Q. 16) My mother told Mary to write to Uncle Peter and thank him for the present.
 Q. 17) Her aunt scolded her that she was behaving badly.
 Q. 18) He informed the group leader that one member fell and hurt his leg quite badly..
 Q. 19) The trainer instructed them that that was the way to do it and to do it by themselves.

- Q. 20) The teacher told the pupils to be careful to look both ways when they crossed the road.
 Q. 21) My mother told my sister to enjoy herself at the party.
 Q. 22) Tom asked me to lend him my book for a moment.
 Q. 23) My brother told me to tell Bob when I saw him that Joe was looking for him.
 Q. 24) My sister reminded me not to forget to collect her watch from the shop.
 Q. 25) My sister told me to let the bird go and not to put it in a cage.

ANSWERS 9.2

- Q. 1) He said that he was just going to the market and (he) wouldn't be long.
 Q. 2) His sister complained to him that she couldn't find the shop (that) he told her about.
 Q. 3) She confided in her sister that she didn't like the pattern on that dress, so she wasn't going to buy it.
 Q. 4) They asked me why I was late again.
 Q. 5) John said that he heard I was discharged from the hospital the day before.
 Q. 6) My mother told her that she would be late if she didn't hurry up.
 Q. 7) George called to say he had left his books behind at my place.
 Q. 8) He told the teacher that he forgot to do his homework the night before.
 Q. 9) I said to my sister that George would forget his bag again unless she reminded him.
 Q. 10) He said that it's raining and he had forgotten his

- (d) The students exclaimed with joy that Hurrah they have qualified the test.
- Q 27) The girls said, "Oh yea! We have been selected".**
- The girls exclaimed with joy that they had been selected.
 - The girls exclaimed with joy to they have been selected.
 - The girls exclaimed with joy that they have being selected.
 - The girls exclaimed with joy that had been they selected.
- Q 28) The poor man said, "Alas! I have lost all the money".**
- The poor man exclaimed with sorrow that he had lost all the money.
 - The poor man exclaimed with sorrow that I had lost all the money.
 - The poor man exclaimed with sorrow that I have lost all the money.
 - The poor man exclaimed with sorrow that he has lost all the money.
- Q 29) The players said, "Oh no! we have not qualified the qualifying stage".**
- The players exclaimed with sorrow that they had not qualified the qualifying stage.
 - The players exclaimed with sorrow to they had not qualified the qualifying stage.
 - The players exclaimed with sorrow that they have not qualified the qualifying stage.
 - The players exclaimed with sorrow that we had not qualified the qualifying stage.
- Q 30) He said, "How tall the building is!".**
- He exclaimed with wonder that how tall the building was.
 - He exclaimed with wonder that the building was very tall.
 - He exclaimed with wonder to the tall of the building.
 - He exclaimed with wonder that the building was how tall.
- Q 31) We said, "Oh wow! How beautiful the scenery is!".**
- We exclaimed with surprise that the scenery was very beautiful.
 - We exclaimed with surprise to the scenery was very beautifully.
 - We exclaimed with surprise that the scenery was how beautiful.

- (d) We exclaimed with surprise that how the scenery is beautiful.
- Q 32) They said, "what a remarkable moment it will be!".**
- They exclaimed with wonder that it would be a remarkable moment.
 - They exclaimed with wonder to it would be a remarkable moment.
 - They exclaimed with wonder that it will be a remarkable moment.
 - They exclaimed with wonder that what it will be a remarkable moment.
- Q 33) The teacher said, "What a question it was".**
- The teacher exclaimed with appreciation that it had been a great question.
 - The teacher said that it was a question.
 - The teacher exclaimed that it was a question.
 - The teacher exclaimed with appreciation that was a great question.
- Q 34) He said, "Are they coming to the academy today"?**
- He wanted to know if they were coming to the academy that day.
 - He wants to know if they are coming to the academy that day.
 - He wanted to confirm that they were coming to the academy that day.
 - He wanted to confirm that did if they were coming to the academy that day.
- Q 35) The teacher said, "Have they discussed it yesterday?".**
- The teacher interrogated if they had discussed it the previous day.
 - The teacher interrogated if they had discussed it yesterday.
 - The teacher interrogated if they have discussed it yesterday.
 - The teacher interrogated if they have discussed it the previous day.
- Q 36) We said, "Had they made it easy or difficult for them".**
- We said if they had made it is easy or difficult for them.
 - We asked if had they made it easy or difficult for them.
 - We asked whether they had made it easy or difficult for them.
 - We asked whether had they made it easy or difficult for them.
- Q 37) I said, "What are you doing tomorrow"?**

- (a) The students desired that would that we had attempted all the MCQ's.
 (b) The students desired that we had attempted all the MCQ's.
 (c) The students desired that they had attempted all the MCQ's.
 (d) The students desired that we had been attempted all the MCQ's.
- Q 14) **The master said to his servant, "open the gate".**
 (a) The master said to his servant that open the gate.
 (b) The master ordered his servant that open the gate.
 (c) The master ordered his servant to open the gate.
 (d) The master ordered his servant to opened the gate.
- Q 15) **The teacher said, "open the door".**
 (a) The teacher ordered to open the door.
 (b) The teacher ordered to opens the door.
 (c) The teacher ordered for open the door.
 (d) the teacher ordered to opened the door.
- Q 16) **The commander said, "Follow the rules".**
 (a) The commander commended to be following the rules.
 (b) The commander commended that follow the rules.
 (c) The commander commended for following the rules.
 (d) The commander commended to follow the rules.
- Q 17) **The S.H.O said, "Catch the thief".**
 (a) The S.H.O commended to catch the thief.
 (b) The S.H.O command to catch the thief.
 (c) The S.H.O commanded that catch the thief.
 (d) The S.H.O commanded for catch the thief.
- Q 18) **The poor man said, "please, provide me shelter".**
 (a) The poor man said that please, provide me shelter.
 (b) The poor man requested to provide him shelter.
 (c) The poor man requested to please provide me shelter.
 (d) The poor man requested that provide him shelter.
- Q 19) **The students said, "Please, forgive us".**
 (a) The students requested to please forgive us.
 (b) The students requested that please forgive us.

- (c) The students requested that forgive them.
 (d) The students requested to forgive them.
- Q 20) **Grandmother said, "Remain steadfast in the time of trouble".**
 (a) Grandmother advised to remain steadfast in the time of trouble.
 (b) Grandmother advised that remain steadfast in the time of trouble.
 (c) Grandmother advised for remaining steadfast in the time of trouble.
 (d) Grandmother advised to remained steadfast in the time of trouble.
- Q 21) **Father said, "Always speak the truth".**
 (a) Father advised to speak the truth.
 (b) Father advised that speak the truth.
 (c) Father advised about speak the truth.
- Q 22) **The teacher said, "Don't create disturbance".**
 (a) The teacher forbade to don't create disturbance.
 (b) The teacher forbade to create disturbance.
 (c) The teacher forbade to not create disturbance.
 (d) The teacher forbade that create disturbance.
- Q 23) **The teacher said, "Don't burn the buildings".**
 (a) The teacher forbade that don't burn the building.
 (b) The teacher forbade to not burning the building.
 (c) The teacher forbade to burn the buildings.
 (d) The teacher forbade that don't burn the buildings.
- Q 24) **They said, "Let us learn new things".**
 (a) They suggested to learn new things.
 (b) They suggested that learn new things.
 (c) They suggested to let us learn new things.
 (d) They suggested that let us learn new things.
- Q 25) **The mob said, "Let us accept their demands".**
 (a) The mob suggested to accept their demands.
 (b) The mob suggested that accept their demands.
 (c) The mob suggested to let us accept their demands.
 (d) The mob suggested that let us accept their demands.
- Q 26) **The students said, "Hurrah! We have qualified the test".**
 (a) The students exclaimed with joy that they had qualified the test.
 (b) The students exclaimed with joy to they had qualified the test.
 (c) The students said Hurrah!

LESSON NO. 10

CONDITIONALS

KEY POINTS

Conditionals

A conditional relates to a sentence that expresses a condition. A conditional sentence is made up of two clauses, the first of which is the conditional clause and it commonly starts with **if**. We refer to it as the **if-clause** (or **if clause**). The if-clause contains a condition, which if fulfilled another action will take place.

The other clause of the conditional sentence is the **main clause** (or **result clause**). The main clause shows the effect of the action taken or if taken in the if-clause. The if-clause usually comes before the main clause although the reverse is possible. A comma comes after the if-clause if the clause comes before the main clause, but if the main clause comes earlier, no comma is required.

In this lesson on conditionals, only the conditional conjunction **if** is used throughout. Conditional sentences using other conditional conjunctions are about similar in constructions. The other conditional conjunctions include **as long as**, **provided**, **unless** and **when**.

Examples:

If the building is unsafe, you enter at your own risk.*

You enter at your own risk **if** the building is unsafe.

(In the first conditional sentence, the if-clause comes before the main clause and a comma is required.)

*This conditional uses the simple present tense in both parts of the sentence and is described as the fourth type known as the **'zero' conditional**.

There are three main types of conditional.

The First Conditional

The Second Conditional

The Third Conditional

The Zero Conditional

The First Conditional

In this **type 1 first conditional**, the simple present tense is used in the if-clause, and the tense in the main clause is the simple future tense.

IF Clause	Main Clause
If + simple present tense	Simple future tense
If you leave now,	you'll arrive home early.

This conditional shows the outcome (you'll arrive home early) if the condition is fulfilled (if you leave now). We use this conditional when the situation in the **if-clause** appears likely or there is a possibility of it happening.

We can turn the two clauses the other way round so that their positions are reversed as follow:

Simple future tense	if + simple present tense
You'll arrive home early,	if you leave now.

Whether the **if-clause** or the **main clause** comes earlier, both are acceptable.

The first conditional sets up a present condition and a probable future outcome.

Examples:

- If you go with me, I will pay for your fare.
- If I see him tomorrow, I will tell him the good news.
- If the weather remains fine, we will go to the beach.
- If you continue to feel better, you will be out of the hospital soon.

We may use **going to** in the **first conditional** to refer to a **future event**.

Examples:

- If she passes her driving test, we are **going to** celebrate at a good restaurant.
- If you don't hurry, we are **going to** be blacklisted for being late.

- come across a person as selfish as he.
- Q. 8) The father shouted who had left the fridge door open.
- Q. 9) A voice said that someone had brought a cat to the cinema.
- Q. 10) He told them that the game hadn't started because some of the players hadn't arrived.
- Q. 11) The stranger asked if the train from Birmingham had arrived yet.
- Q. 12) I asked my mother if she had bought some berries for me.
- Q. 13) The man in the bookshop told me that they had ordered my book but they hadn't received it yet.

- Q. 14) The teacher told his parent that Ryan had cut his chin playing hockey, and he/she had taken him to hospital.
- Q. 15) He asked me how I had found his address.
- Q. 16) The police questioned him (as to) when he had last seen the deceased.
- Q. 17) She asked him how much he had paid for the pony.
- Q. 18) Peter asked his friend whether he had ever lived in Washington.
- Q. 19) The policeman told the inspector that he had arrested two men who had tried to steal something from a car.

PRACTICE MCQ'S ANSWERS

S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer	S.No	Answer
1	a	11	c	21	a	31	a	41	c
2	b	12	d	22	b	32	a		
3	b	13	c	23	c	33	a		
4	d	14	c	24	a	34	a		
5	d	15	a	25	a	35	a		
6	c	16	d	26	a	36	c		
7	a	17	a	27	a	37	a		
8	a	18	b	28	a	38	a		
9	c	19	d	29	a	39	a		
10	d	20	a	30	b	40	d		

ACADEMY
Estb - 1990

umbrella, and asked if I could share my umbrella with him.

- Q. 11) She said she hated it when it started snowing just as she was setting out.
- Q. 12) She said she thought it's all my fault that she got into that mess.
- Q. 13) Someone said that the train would have arrived by seven o'clock.
- Q. 14) She promised us that she would come if she could.
- Q. 15) She told me that she would buy a new watch for me when she went to Bangkok but she didn't know when.
- Q. 16) Tom told the visitor that his mother was not at home and he didn't know where she was then.
- Q. 17) Janet said to Paul that she would love to go with him but she was afraid she couldn't because her uncle was arriving in a few minutes.
- Q. 18) My father asked me one evening whether I would stop practicing my violin. He said that the screeching noise gave him a headache.
- Q. 19) Mickey said to Ray and Roy that they were out of their mind if they believed what Mike said that morning.
- Q. 20) Mrs. White said that there were no pineapples at the market that day so she bought some oranges instead.

ANSWERS 9.3

- Q. 1) She admitted that she stole money from her employer.
- Q. 2) One of the judges declared that that was the best chocolate cake he/she had ever tasted.
- Q. 3) We were told that we were too young to register for National Service.
- Q. 4) She said that they often quarrelled but they always made it up soon after."
- Q. 5) Peter told me that his family would be moving to San Diego the next month.
- Q. 6) The army officer said that the whole town was taken by rebel forces during the night.
- Q. 7) Sue told her brother that he had put on a lot of weight since she last saw him.
- Q. 8) My father told me not to go away until the clerk had given me a receipt.
- Q. 9) Mary told her mother that she would be starting her sewing lessons the following month.
- Q. 10) I told Jim that the trip had been postponed to the end of the month.
- Q. 11) Jane said to her sister that all the tickets for that day's show had sold out. She told her that they would go another day.
- Q. 12) Grace said to me that she knew where Ray was. She told me he's down by the river, fishing.
- Q. 13) Mike said to me that he could post the letters for

me. He told me that he was going to the Post Office the next day.

- Q. 14) Lucy suggested to her brothers that they went to Hong Kong." She told them that there's a water carnival on that week-end.
- Q. 15) The old man advised the boys not to go swimming in the river. He told them that there were crocodiles in it.
- Q. 16) The teacher said that there would be a test the following Monday. He said that anybody who didn't get at least half marks would be in trouble.
- Q. 17) Mr. Williams told his wife that he would probably be late that night. He told her that the meeting would take quite a long time and not to wait up for him.
- Q. 18) The teacher told them to go and see their principal. The teacher said that the principal would tell them what to do.
- Q. 19) My father reminded us that our cousins would arrive early the next morning. He told us that they were driving down from Liverpool.
- Q. 20) He said to us that he would wait for us at the bus station. He asked us not to be late.

ANSWERS 9.4

- Q. 1) He said that his brother is working in the Post Office.
- Q. 2) My sister has just told me that it is still raining hard.
- Q. 3) Bob told him that he doesn't want to buy his car.
- Q. 4) He always tells us that he works hard every day of the year.
- Q. 5) He never says he is sorry to anybody in his life.
- Q. 6) She will probably reply that she is very sorry but she is too busy to go to the cinema with him.
- Q. 7) He has often said to us he is tired of living in this noisy city.
- Q. 8) My father has warned me that there are a couple of cobras somewhere in the hedge.
- Q. 9) Nick told us that the train arrives at one o'clock.
- Q. 10) Whenever his children ask him for money he will say that he hasn't got any.

ANSWERS 9.5

- Q. 1) The boy told her mum that the washing-line had broken.
- Q. 2) My brother said that some birds had eaten the bananas.
- Q. 3) She told her sister that she had not read her letter.
- Q. 4) He complained to the supervisor that nobody had come to help him.
- Q. 5) The police officer asked the crowd what had gone wrong.
- Q. 6) Peter asked Mary whether she had finished reading the magazine.
- Q. 7) She told off her boyfriend that she had never

If he called her, she always said she was busy.
If I bet on a horse, the horse often came last.

ETEA PAST PAPERS (LESSON NO. 10 CONDITIONALS)

Q 23) My mother offered me milk. But for my life, I could not drink it.

[The underlined expression means:]

- (a) However hard I may try
- (b) Because of my life
- (c) For the sake of my life
- (d) During my life

ANSWER: (a)

Q 24) Which of the following is correct in all respects?

- (a) I have done matric in 2010.
- (b) This is a utensil.
- (c) The population of the world rises.
- (d) This is the best peach producing valley.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 25) I am afraid we have not got ___ sugar for making tea.

- (a) some
- (b) no
- (c) any
- (d) plenty

ANSWER: (c)

Q 26) Choose the correct sentences.

- (a) I am not going to the show because won't have time.
- (b) I am not going to the show because I don't have time.
- (c) I am not going to the show because I didn't have time.
- (d) I am not going to the show because I will not have time

ANSWER: (b)

Q 27) Choose the correct sentence.

- (a) The new sultan, entitled to four wives prefer, monogamy.
- (b) The new sultan, entitled to four wives preference monogamy.
- (c) The new sultan, entitled to four wives preference monogamy
- (d) The new sultan, entitled to four wives, prefers monogamy.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 28) When Ahmad reached home last night, his family _____ their dinner.

- (a) Would have eaten
- (b) Had eaten
- (c) Ate
- (d) Have eaten

ANSWER: (b)

2018

Q 29) Choose the correct sentence:

- (a) If I knew him better, I would have insisted that he change the hour of the lecture.
- (b) If I knew him better, I would have insisted that he change the hour of the lecture.
- (c) If I knew better, I would insist that he change the hour of the lecture.
- (d) If I knew him better, I would insist for him to change the hour of the lecture.

ANSWER: (d)

2015

If we **missed** the last train, we **should** stay in an inn for the night.

The Third Conditional

This **type 3 conditional** expresses a situation in the past that did not happen, so when we use this conditional we are actually imagining a different past that cannot be changed. This unreal situation can never happen, not now or ever.

Conditional Clause	Main Clause
If + past perfect tense	would / could / might + -ed
If you had watched the match,	you would have known how exciting it was.

With this conditional, we use the past perfect in the conditional clause and the perfect conditional (would have + past participle) in the main clause to:

express disappointment or regret about things that are not possible to happen now.

Examples:

If you had married his brother instead of him, you could have been a happier person.

If you had taken up teaching, you would have been better off.

Talk about things that should have happened in the past but didn't.

Examples:

If he had gone to the doctor earlier, he wouldn't have got this disability.

If I had completed my education, I would have been a person of importance or authority.

Imagine unrealistic situations.

Examples:

If I had been taller, I would have been a professional basketball player.

If I had been a businessman, I wouldn't have led a struggling life.

Express criticism.

Examples:

If he had got up earlier, he wouldn't have missed the bus.

If you had been a bit more patient, you would have got what you wanted.

Other modal verbs such as **could** and **might** can also be used in the main clause.

Examples:

If I have known about it, I **could** have done something to help.

If the police had arrived earlier, they **might** have apprehended the thief.

The Zero Conditional

The **zero conditional** is used to describe something that is always true. The two parts that make up the zero conditional sentences have the same tense: **simple present**.

if + present simple (conditional clause)	present simple (main clause)
If I mix yellow with blue,	I get green.
If you draw back the curtains,	you let the sunlight in.

The positions of the two clauses above are not fixed. In other words, they can change places.

present simple	if + present simple
I get green	if I mix yellow with blue.
You let the sunlight in	if you draw back the curtains.

When/whenever can be used instead of **if**.

Examples:

If/When I mix yellow with blue, I get green.

We can use the **past simple** instead of the **present simple** as above. The past simple must be used in both clauses.

Examples:

First conditional and modal verb

Modal verbs may be used in the first conditional. The modal verbs have a future meaning and so are used instead of the future tense in the main clause, not in the conditional clause.

'Conditional Clause**Main Clause**

If + simple present tense

can/could; will/would; may/might; shall/should

If the weather improves,

we will go to the park.

The modal verbs are used in type 1 conditional sentences to express willingness, possibility, permission, and suggestion.

Examples:

- If the movie is boring, we **can** always leave. (Willingness)
- If you help me with this, I **could** finish it earlier. (Probability)
- If she is angry with you, I **would** go myself.
- If you are in a hurry, you **may** leave now. (Permission)
- If we save enough money, we **might** visit you next year.
- If he drives faster, we **shall** arrive there before dark. (Possibility)
- If we want to get there on time, we **should** take a taxi. (Suggestion)

The Second Conditional

This **type 2 second conditional** is used to talk about the situation now, not in the past although we use the simple past tense in the if-clause. The situation we express is imaginary, unlikely or hypothetical, and is therefore unlikely to happen now or in the future. The second conditional uses the simple past tense in the if-clause and the present conditional in the main clause.

We use Type 2 conditional to describe:

An unlikely event or one that is not probable now.

Examples:

If we **earned** more money, we **would** buy a bigger house.

(We are not earning more money.)

If my parents **restored** their broken relationship, I **would** be very happy.

(It's unlikely they will do that, at least not for the foreseeable future.)

A purely hypothetical situation.**Examples:**

If I **cooked** like her, I **would** open a restaurant.

(I can't cook like her.)

If she **loved** me, I **would** propose to her.

(I don't think she loves me.)

An imaginary situation that is unlikely to happen now or in the future.**Examples:**

If I **won** the lottery, I **would** buy a luxury yacht.

If I **married** her, I **would** be the happiest man alive.

What is absolutely impossible.**Examples:**

If your father **were** alive, he **would** be very proud of you.

If I **were** younger, I **would** do things differently.

(The condition beginning with 'If ... were ...' is usually used for something that is impossible to fulfill as it is not real and will always remain unreal, so the subjunctive **were** is used.)

Second conditional and modal verb

If Clause	Main Clause
If + simple past tense	could / would / might / should
If you asked your grandmother	she would explain everything.

Examples:

If more police officers **patrolled** in the area, a lot of crime **could** be prevented.

If I **told** him what happened, he **might** believe me.

- **Non-separable:** The rescuers **called off** the search because of the worsening weather.
(Noun object **search** comes after the particle **off**.) **Separable:** Dad **turned** the television **on**.
(**Turn on** = switch on something so that it starts working) **Separable Transitive Phrasal Verb**
When a phrasal verb is **transitive**, it takes an object which can be a noun or pronoun. In a separable phrasal verb, the object comes between the verb and the particle.

Examples:

- The wind **blew** the papers **off** the table.
(The noun object **papers** comes between the verb **blew** and the particle **off** of the phrasal verb. **Blow off** = cause to move away by the wind)
- He deserved praise for managing to **bring** that **off**.
(**Bring off** = succeed in doing something difficult)
- You can **drop** me **off** at the railway station.
(The pronoun **me** is placed between the verb **drop** and the particle **off**. **Drop off** = take or leave someone at a particular place)
- We must **give** this wallet **back** to its rightful owner. (**Give back**: return something to someone)
- She **handed** the leaflets **out** to whoever would accept them.
(**Hand out** = give something to one person or many people)
- His part-time office job is to **put** the files **away**.
(**Put away** = return something to the place where it is usually stored)
- I **picked** the boys **up** at the library. (**Pick up** = get or bring back someone from some place)
- We have been **putting** some money **aside** every month for a new car.
(**Put aside** = save [money] or keep [something] for the future)
- He took days to **throw** those rotten apples **away**. (**Throw away** = get rid of something that is not wanted)
- She **wrote** my phone number **down** on a piece of paper. (**Write down** = jot a quick short note of something)

Non-separable Transitive Phrasal Verb

The verb and particle that make up a non-separable transitive phrasal verb are not placed separately. The object comes after the particle.

Examples:

- They **called off** the match due to bad weather.
(Noun object **match** comes after the particle **off**. **Call off** = stop a planned event or activity from taking place)
- They **called on** her when she was hospitalized.
(The phrasal verb **called on** cannot be separated. **Not:** They **called** her **on** when she was hospitalized. Pronoun object **her** comes after the particle **on**. **Call on** = pay a brief visit)
- We **came across** some old photos of granny in her school days.
(**Come across** = find something by chance)
- He will **look after** my dog while I am away.
(**Look after** = take care of)
- They **looked through** the drawer but couldn't find it.
(**Look through** = examine briefly and carefully in order to discover something)
- He **pointed out** the accused to the police.
(**Point out** = direct attention to someone [or something] by pointing)
- I **ran across** the grandmother of my ex-girlfriend.
(**Run across** = meet [someone] unexpectedly)
- Jack **ran into** Jill while he was on his way home.
(**Run into** = meet by chance)
- She **tried on** a few pairs of shoes but they didn't fit.
(**Try on** = put on something to see if it fits and how it looks)
- He has to **turn down** the job that was offered to him.
(**Turn down** = refuse to accept)

Non-separable Intransitive Phrasal Verb

The words that make up non-separable phrasal verbs cannot be separated, and they are not followed by a noun or a pronoun object.

LESSON NO. 11

PHRASAL VERBS

KEY POINTS

Phrasal Verbs

A phrasal verb is formed when a verb combines with a preposition (**at, on, over**) or an adverb or both. This preposition or adverb is called a particle. Some examples of particle are **at, in, away, back, down, off, on, over, up**. Such a combination creates a new verb that has its own special meaning. Most phrasal verbs are two-word phrases. There are phrasal verbs that consist of three words.

Examples:

- He lived off his parents until he got married. (Phrasal verb is **lived off**; **lived** is a verb; **off** is a preposition)
- Her dog was knocked down by a bus. (Phrasal verb is **knocked down**; **knock** is a verb; **down** is an adverb)
- She can't put up with her boyfriend for long.
- (Phrasal verb is **put up with**; **with** is a preposition; **up** is an adverb)

Phrasal verbs are described as idiomatic, that is their meanings cannot be arrived at by looking at the individual words that make up the phrasal verb.

Examples:

- I look forward to get away this summer.
(The phrasal verb **gets away** means **escape or go somewhere for a holiday**. It consists of the verb **get** and the adverb **away** is a particle.)
- I'll speak up, so those of you at the back can hear me.
(The phrasal verb **speaks up** means **speak louder**. It consists of the verb **speak** and the adverb **up** is a particle.)

Some phrasal verbs retain the meaning of the original verb while some others have meaning completely different to the original verb.

Examples:

- I asked them to come in.
(The phrasal verb **come in** means **enter** which is easily understood as the meaning of the word **come** is very familiar.)
- The deal fell through at the last minute.
(The phrasal verb **fell through** means **not completed successfully** which is different in meaning to the verb **fell**.)

Phrasal verbs can be separable or non-separable

The words that make up a phrasal verb can be separable or non-separable. When it is separable, a noun or a pronoun object comes between the verb and the particle. If a phrasal verb is non-separable, a noun or pronoun object always comes after the particle and verb that make up the phrasal verb. More details can be found in the individual sections:

1. Separable and non-separable phrasal verbs
2. Separable Transitive Phrasal Verb
3. Non-separable Transitive Phrasal Verb
4. Non-separable Intransitive Phrasal Verb
5. Three-word phrasal verbs

Separable and non-separable phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs can be both as separable and non-separable.

Separable: A phrasal verb is said to be separable when a noun or pronoun object can come between the verb and the particle that make up the phrasal verb.

Non-separable: When a phrasal verb is described as non-separable, it means the particle cannot be separated from the verb; that is, the noun or pronoun object cannot come between the verb and the particle. The object can only come after the verb and the particle of the phrasal verb.

The following examples show words that make up a phrasal verb can be used both ways: separately and non-separately.

Examples:

- **Separable:** The rescuers **called** the search **off** because of the worsening weather.
(The noun **search** is between verb **called** and the particle **off**. **Call off** = stop doing something)

LESSON NO. 10 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 10.1

Fill in each blank with the correct word to complete the sentence.

- Q. 1) If you _____ (apologize, will apologize, are apologizing), she will speak to you again.
 Q. 2) If you _____ (water, will water, have water) the plants regularly, they will not die.
 Q. 3) If you _____ (have, had) proof of your innocence, they will not blame you for what happened.
 Q. 4) If you take the right turning, you _____ (have come, are coming, will come) to a dead end.
 Q. 5) If you miss the bus, you _____ (take, can take, have taken) a taxi.
 Q. 6) If the weather is fine, I _____ prune the bushes. (could, shall, should have)
 Q. 7) If you hurry, you _____ be able to catch the bus. (will, will have, could have)
 Q. 8) If the sports complex is not built by June, the public _____ complain. (should have, will, could have)
 Q. 9) If his mother does not accompany him, he _____ not go to the dentist. (will, will have, could have not)
 Q. 10) If he behaves himself, we _____ take him to the zoo. (should have, will, could have)

EXERCISE 10.2

Fill in each blank with the correct word as given to complete the sentence.

- Q. 11) If they _____ (have, had) a shuttlecock, they could play badminton.
 Q. 12) If I _____ (win, won) a prize in the lottery, I could travel to the Far East.
 Q. 13) If it _____ (rains, rained) all day and night, there might be a severe flood here.
 Q. 14) If we _____ (lose, lost) our way, we would ask for help.
 Q. 15) If I _____ (am, was, were) you, I _____ accept the job.
 Q. 16) If you were caught littering, you _____ (will, would) be fined heavily.
 Q. 17) If he _____ (touches, touched, is touching) this switch, the alarm would go off.
 Q. 18) If they both kept quiet, there _____ (will, would) be no argument.
 Q. 19) If he _____ (has, had) at least twenty thousand dollars, he could buy the house.
 Q. 20) If I _____ (want, wanted) to sell my car, I would put an advertisement in the newspapers.

EXERCISE 10.3

Each of these conditional sentences is incorrect. What should be the correct one?

- Q. 21) If only she warned him in time, his life might have been saved.
 Q. 22) If the dog had been chained, it had not bitten the salesman.
 Q. 23) If the tyre/tire was not punctured, they could have arrived earlier.
 Q. 24) If he had an account in the bank, he can deposit the cheque.
 Q. 25) If the rescuers hadn't been quick enough, the girl would drown.
 Q. 26) If she had not stopped talking, she will have to leave the library.
 Q. 27) If I have found the keys, I would have given them to you.
 Q. 28) If you have eaten less and exercised more, you will have lost some weight.
 Q. 29) If he fallen from the tree, he would broken his neck.
 Q. 30) If I cook more, I would invite your friends for lunch.

ANSWERS. LESSON 10

Exercise 10.1	Exercise 10.2	Exercise 10.3
Q. 1) apologize	Q. 1) had	Q. 1) had
Q. 2) water	Q. 2) won	Q. 2) would
Q. 3) have	Q. 3) rained	Q. 3) had
Q. 4) come	Q. 4) lost	Q. 4) Could
Q. 5) can take	Q. 5) were	Q. 5) Have
Q. 6) shall	Q. 6) would	Q. 6) Would
Q. 7) will	Q. 7) touched	Q. 7) Had
Q. 8) will	Q. 8) would	Q. 8) Had, would
Q. 9) won't	Q. 9) had	Q. 9) Had, have
Q. 10) shall	Q. 10) wanted	Q. 10) Had, have

- Q. 29) (a) Ran out (b) Ran with
(c) Ran from (d) Ran into
The child from home and has been missing for three days.
- Q. 30) (a) Ran away (b) Ran into
(c) Ran from (d) Ran down
Let's these lines one more time before the show.
- Q. 31) (a) Run over (b) Run through
(c) Run into (d) Run down
I accidentally your bicycle in the driveway.
- Q. 32) (a) Ran over (b) Ran with
(c) Ran from (d) Ran down
Don't forget to your new earrings for the party.
- Q. 33) (a) Put in (b) Put on (c) Put with (d) Put up
I don't think I can three small children in the car.
- Q. 34) (a) Put up in (b) Put down with
(c) Put up with (d) Put up from
We are our trip until January because of the hurricane.
- Q. 35) (a) Putting off (b) Putting in
(c) Putting with (d) Putting from
The neighbours the fire before the firemen arrived.
- Q. 36) (a) Putout (b) Putfrom
(c) Put....in (d) Put....into
The students the substitute teacher because his pants were too short.
- Q. 37) (a) Put.....down (b) Put.....up
(c) Put....in (d) Put....from
I'll my boyfriend when he runs by.
- Q. 38) (a) Pointout (b) Point.....from
(c) Point.....with (d) Point.....in
I three sweaters for you to try on.
- Q. 39) (a) Picked out (b) Picked in
(c) Picked with (d) Picked from
That bully will being mean to my little brother.
- Q. 40) (a) Pay for (b) Pay with
(c) Pay in (d) Pay from
Thanks for buying my ticket. I'll you on Friday.
- Q. 41) (a) Pay back (b) Pay in (c) Pay from (d) Pay with
The professor ... the textbooks ... before class.
- Q. 42) (a) Passedout (b) Passedin
(c) Passedfrom (d) Passed.....with
It was so hot in the church that an elderly lady....
- Q. 43) (a) Passed out (b) Passed from
(c) Passed with (d) Passed in
I the twins' names again!

- Q. 44) (a) Mixed up (b) Mixed from
(c) Mixed with (d) Mixed in
Josie a story about why we were late.
- Q. 45) (a) Made up (b) Made from
(c) Made in (d) Made with
My little sister has always to me.
- Q. 46) (a) Looked with (b) Looked in
(c) Looked from (d) Looked up
Can you my essay for spelling mistakes?
- Q. 47) (a) Looked down (b) Looked with
(c) Looked over (d) Looked up
We are going to the price of snowboards today.
- Q. 48) (a) Looked down (b) Looked in
(c) Looked into (d) Looked up
I'm the Christmas break.
- Q. 49) (a) Looking forward with (b) Looking forward in
(c) Looking forward from (d) Looking forward to
Ever since we stole that chocolate bar your dad has me.
- Q. 50) (a) Looked down with (b) Looked down in
(c) Looked down at (d) Looked down on
I have to my sick grandmother.
- (a) Look back (b) Look after
(c) Look at (d) Look from

ANSWERS LESSON 11

1. Work out	2. Work out
3. Work out	4. Wore off
5. Warm up	6. Usedup
7. Try.....on	8. Turned up
9. Turn.....up	10. Turn....on
11. Turned....off	12. Turneddown
13. Turndown	14. Threwaway
15. Think.....over	16. Think back
17. Tore up	18. Takeout
19. Take...back	20. Took....apart
21. Shop around	22. Shows off
23. Sleep over	24. Sort ...out
25. Stick to	26. Set....up
27. Sent back	28. Ran out
29. Ran away	30. Run over/through
31. Ran over	32. Put on
33. Put up with	34. Putting off
35. Put....out	36. Put down
37. Point.... out	38. Picked out
39. Pay for	40. Payback
41. Passedout	42. Passed out
43. Mixed up	44. Made up
45. Looked up	46. Look over
47. Look into	48. Looking forward to
49. Looked down on	50. Look after

LESSON NO. 11 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE 11.1

Q. 1) We have to the total cost before we buy the house.

- (a) Calculating (b) Work in
(c) Work out (d) Work it

Q. 2) Our plan fine.

- (a) Worked (b) Worked in
(c) Worked out (d) Worked to

Q. 3) I at the gym three times a week.

- (a) Work in (b) Work out
(c) Work from (d) Work with

Q. 4) Most of my make-up before I got to the party.

- (a) Ware away (b) Wore off
(c) Wore out (d) Wore in

Q. 5) I always ...by doing sit-ups before I go for a run.

- (a) Warm out (b) Warm in
(c) Warm up (d) Warm from

Q. 6) The kids ...all of the toothpaste so we need to buy some more.

- (a) Used in (b) Used down
(c) Used up (d) Used from

Q. 7) I'm going to these jeans, but I don't think they will fit.

- (a) Try in (b) Try on
(c) Try up (d) Try down

Q. 8) Our cat after we put posters up all over the neighborhood.

- (a) Turned off (b) Turned on
(c) Turned in (d) Turned up

Q. 9) Can you the music? This is my favorite song.

- (a) Turn in (b) Turn down
(c) Turn up (d) Turn from

Q. 10) It's too dark in here. Let's some lights

- (a) Turn in (b) Turn off
(c) Turn on (d) Turn up

Q. 11) Your mother wants you to the TV and come for dinner.

- (a) Turn down (b) Turn off
(c) Turn up (d) Turn in

Q. 12) I the job because I don't want to move.

- (a) Turned up (b) Turn in
(c) Turn down (d) Turn with

Q. 13) Please the TV while the guests are here

- (a) Turn off (b) Turn down
(c) Turn up (d) Turn in

Q. 14) We our old furniture when we won the lottery.

- (a) Threw away (b) Threw in
(c) Threw with (d) Threw from

Q. 15) I'll have to this job offer before I make my final decision.

- (a) Think off (b) Think over
(c) Think in (d) Think down

Q. 16) When I on my youth, I wish I had studied harder.

- (a) Think back (b) Think about
(c) Think off (d) Think up

Q. 17) I my ex-boyfriend's letters and gave them back to him.

- (a) Tore away (b) Tore up
(c) Tore from (d) Tore down

Q. 18) Can you the garbage to the street for me?

- (a) Take out (b) Take in (c) Take off (d) Take with

Q. 19) I have to our new TV because it doesn't work.

- (a) Take with (b) Take away
(c) Take back (d) Take after

Q. 20) He the car brakes and found the problem.

- (a) Took part (b) Took apart
(c) Took from (d) Took back

Q. 21) I want to a little before I decide on these boots.

- (a) Shop in (b) Shop about
(c) Shop around (d) Shop with

Q. 22) He always on his skateboard

- (a) Shows with (b) Shows off
(c) Shows of (d) Shows in

Q. 23) You should tonight if the weather is too bad to drive home.

- (a) Sleep in (b) Sleep over
(c) Sleep around (d) Sleep at

Q. 24) We need to the bills before the first of the month.

- (a) Sort out (b) Sort with
(c) Sort in (d) Sort from

Q. 25) You will lose weight if you the diet.

- (a) Stick to (b) Stick with
(c) Stick from (d) Stick into

Q. 26) Our boss a meeting with the president of the company.

- (a) Set with (b) Set in
(c) Set up (d) Set down

Q. 27) My letter got to me because I used the wrong stamp.

- (a) Sent back (b) Sent from
(c) Sent after (d) Sent with

Q. 28) We of shampoo so I had to wash my hair with soap.

Examples:

- When she heard what happened, she **broke down**.
(No noun or pronoun object follows the phrasal verb. **Break down** = lose control of one's emotions)
- We decided that we should **get together** more regularly.
(**Get together** = meet and spend time with one another)
- They shouted to him to **hurry up**.
(**Hurry up** = act or move quickly)
- He asked them to **join in**.
(**Join in** = participate or become involved in an activity)
- There was an organic farm nearby where we enjoyed **looking around**.
(**Look around** = go through or explore a place)
- He was given a week to **move out** after he fought with other tenants.
(**Move out** = leave a place [house, etc.] where one has been living)
- I had to **pull over** when I had a puncture.
(**Pull over** = move and stop a vehicle to the side of a road)
- We waited but he didn't **show up**.
(**Show up** = appear somewhere by appointment or unexpectedly)
- After what happened, he promised to **speak up**.
(**Speak up** = say openly about something)
- We **stayed up** late to watch the match on television.
(**Stay up** = continue to be awake)

Three-word phrasal verbs A phrasal verb can be a combination of three words. The three-word phrasal verbs are made up of verb + particle + preposition, and they are non-separable. The phrasal verb is transitive because the third word, usually a preposition, must take a noun or pronoun object.

Examples:

- The members **came out with** a set of proposals on reform of the club.
(**Come out with** = say or express something)
- The police are **following up on** leads pointing to the whereabouts of the kidnapped victim.
(**Follow up on** = discover more or take further action connected with something)
- He's wondering aloud how he could **get out of** meeting his mother-in-law this weekend.
(**Get out of** = avoid doing something)
- He spends the weekends **hanging out with** a bunch of kids at the shopping centre.
(**Hang out with** = spend a lot of time with someone)
- He often **listened in on** her phone conversations without her knowledge.
(**Listen in on** = listen secretly to a private conversation)
- We always **looked up to** him for his courage. (**Look up to** = respect or admire [someone])
- I'm saving more this month to **make up for** a withdrawal last month.
(**Make up for** = compensate; or have something to correct or take the place of something else)
- She shopped the whole day at the sales and never seemed to **run out of** money.
(**Run out of** = use up something so that none is left)
- We have to **stand up for** ourselves.
(**Stand up for** = defend or support [someone or something] against attack or criticism)
- Someone **walked off with** my bag of groceries when I wasn't looking.
(**Walk off with** = steal or take something without asking for permission)

Q.30) Saba was sick on the bus. [The underlined prepositional phrase functions as a _____ in this sentence:]

- (a) Adjunct (b) Disjunct
(c) Conjunct (d) Adverbial

ANSWER: (d)

Q 31) Which one of the following is opposite in meaning to the word SYMPATHY?

- (a) Apathy (b) Pathos
(c) Empathy (d) Jealousy

ANSWER: (a)

Q 32) A person who leaves his country and settles in another country is called:

- (a) Emigrant (b) Immigrant
(c) Migrant (d) Aborigine

ANSWER: (a)

Q 33) Out of the following indicate the matching item

for PUPPIES.

- (a) School (b) Litter
(c) Covey (d) Group

ANSWER: (b)

Q 34) "Disdain" (choose the word with opposite meaning.

- (a) Haughtiness (b) Erroneous
(c) Contempt (d) Respect

ANSWER: (d)

Q 35) Every now and then implies.

- (a) Often (b) Always
(c) Occasionally (d) Everywhere

ANSWER: (c)

Q 36) To make a clean breast of something means:

- (a) To do the cleaning
(b) To carefully avoid a trouble
(c) To clearly admit something
(d) Both A and B

ANSWER: (c)

Q 37) For an average man it is very hard to earn bread and butter in many countries. (Choose the correct meaning of the underlined idiom).

- (a) Meals (b) Livelihood
(c) To earn their names
(d) Bread along with butter

ANSWER: (b)

Q 38) Altruistic

- (a) Unselfish concern for the welfare of others
(b) Avoiding disturbance
(c) Hating people for no particular reason
(d) Artistic tendencies

ANSWER: (a)

2017

Q 39) Choose the antonym for the word "ABROGATE"

- (a) Transgress (b) Signify
(c) Alleviate (d) Ratify

ANSWER: (d)

Q 40) Choose the antonym of the word. (UNTENABLE)

- (a) Tender
(c) Supportable

- (b) Sleepy
(d) Tremulous

ANSWER: (c)

Q 41) That a driver swerves in order to avoid an accident can be proven by examining the marks on the pavements.

(The underlined word nearly means)

- (a) Stops quickly (b) Turns sharply
(c) Hits something else (d) Goes backward

ANSWER: (b)

Q 42) Choose the synonym for the word "ABRIDGE"

- (a) To make a bridge (b) Shorten
(c) Magnify (d) Divert

ANSWER: (b)

Q 43) It is a general perception that doctors have a callous disregard for me feeling of others:

(The underlined word nearly means)

- (a) Respectable (b) Careful
(c) Unfeeling (d) Sensitive

ANSWER: (c)

Q 44) Choose the synonym for the word "ATTENUATE"

- (a) Appear (b) Be absent
(c) Weaken (d) Testify

ANSWER: (c)

Q 45) A thirsty buyer purchases fruits and vegetables in season.

(The underlined word nearly means)

- (a) Careful (b) Professional
(c) Disinterested (d) Healthy

ANSWER: (a)

Q 46) The feminine of MILKMAN is

- (a) Milk girl (b) Milk maid
(c) Milk woman (d) Milk lady

ANSWER: (b)

Q 47) The plural of LOUSE is

- (a) Lices (b) Lice (c) louses (d) Lyces

ANSWER: (b)

Q 48) The synonym for the word "ANIMOSITY" is:

- (a) Power full (b) hatred
(c) Hatful (d) Quarrelsome

ANSWER: (b)

Q 49) Hussain suffers from no _____ about his capabilities.

- (a) Doubts (b) hallucinations
(c) illusion (d) imaginations

ANSWER: (c)

Q 50) The emperor _____ his kingship become a hermit.

- (a) Abolished (b) Abated
(c) Abdicated (d) abandoned

ANSWER: (d)

Q 51) The antonym for the word "ACQUIT" is

41. To beat about the bush ; Approach a subject in a roundabout method
42. Bury the hatchet ; To make peace
43. By fits and starts ; Irregularly
44. Capital punishment ; Death sentence
45. By hook or by crook ; By fair or foul means
46. Eat humble pie ; To face humiliation
47. Hit below the belt ; To act unfairly
48. In apple pie order ; In perfect order
49. Leave one in lurch ; To desert in difficulty
50. To make a clean breast of ; To confess fully one's faults
51. To nip the evil in the bud ; To destroy an evil in early stage
52. Pick holes in another's coat ; To find fault with another
53. Scot free ; To go unpunished
54. Smell a rat ; To have a reason to suspect
55. Through thick and thin ; Through every difficulty
56. True to one's salt ; Faithful to one's master
57. To turn the corner ; To begin to improve
58. With a grain of salt ; To accept a statement with doubt as to its complete true
59. Worship the rising sun ; To respect one rising in power
60. A Herculean task ; An extremely difficult or dangerous task
61. A fish out of water ; In a wrong place
62. A leap in the dark ; An act of which we can't force consequences
63. A thorn in one's side ; A constant source of annoyance
64. To be at one's beck and call ; Under one's absolute control
65. Bread and Butter ; Means of subsistence
66. Burn one's fingers ; To get into trouble
67. Burn the candle at both ends ; Use up too much energy
68. To cut the Gordian knot ; To solve the difficulty
69. Cut and dried ; Ready-made
70. Feather one's own nest ; To make money by unfair means
71. To fish in troubled water ; To do something under very unpromising circumstance
72. To give oneself airs ; Affected manners
73. To give the devil his due ; To allow even a bad man the credit due
74. To hang by thread ; To be in a critical condition
75. A henpecked husband ; A man habitually snubbed by his wife
76. Hush money ; Money given as a bribe to hush or make one keep silent
77. Kick up a row ; Make a great noise
78. To let the cat out of the bag ; To reveal a secret
79. Null and void ; Not valid ; of no effect
80. On the spur of the moment ; At once
81. Pay one back in one's own coin ; To treat in the same way as one has been treated
82. Put in cold storage ; To forget or neglect something
83. Pull wires ; To manage the show by secret Influence
84. Read b/w the lines ; To hit at the real meaning
85. Sit on the fence ; To avoid taking sides ; to remain neutral
86. A square deal ; Justice
87. Sword of Damocles ; Treating danger
88. To take up the gauntlet ; To accept the challenge
89. To eat one's heart out ; To suffer silently, bitterly
90. B/t the devil and the deep sea ; B/w two dangers equally harmful
91. A sweet tooth ; A liking for sweetmeat
92. A dark horse ; An unknown person
93. A bottleneck ; Anything that cause delays
94. To put one's foot down ; To show determination
95. A wet blanket ; A grumbling, depressing person
96. To throw up the sponge ; To acknowledge defeat
97. A feather in one's cap ; Something to be proud of
98. A red letter day ; An auspicious day
99. Bag and baggage ; With all one's belongings.

LESSON NO. 12

VOCABULARY

KEY POINTS

Homonyms: words that sound alike but have different spellings and meanings

Ate---eight
Be---bee
Cell---sell
Flour---flower
One---won
Sea---see
There---their
Would---wood

Synonyms: words that have similar meaning.

Above---over
Below---under
Cry---weep
Fix---repair
Hard---difficult
Home---house
Late---tardy
Road---street
Small---little

Antonyms: words that have opposite meaning.

Asleep---awake
Bad---good
Close---open
False---true
Happy---sad
Left---right
More---less
Sour---sweet

Idioms: idioms are words, phrases, or expressions which are commonly used in everyday conversation. They are often metaphorical to make the language more colourful. You can use them to express something more vividly and often more briefly. They serve as an image or mental picture. Remember that idiomatic expressions are mostly used when speaking informally.

All ears: listening intently fully focused or awaiting an explanation.

A bitter pill: a situation or information that is unpleasant but must be accepted.

Breaking up the wrong tree: looking in the wrong place. Accusing the wrong person.

Bite off more than you can chew: to take on a task that is way too big.

Idioms

1. To add insult to injury; To intensify a person
2. To be born with a silver spoon; To be born in a rich family
Spoon in one's mouth;

3. A bolt from the blue; An expected disaster
4. To blow one's own trumpet; To boast
5. A bone of contention; Cause of quarrel
6. To burn one's fingers; To suffer
7. To beat black & blue; To beat mercilessly
8. To cast an aspersion; To bring discredit
9. To cry over spilt milk; To feel sorry for what has happened
10. To cut a sorry figure; To make a poor impression
11. To die in harness; To die while doing one's duty
12. To end in smoke; To fail
13. To go to the dogs; To be ruined
14. To hang in the balance; To remain undecided
15. To hit the nail on the head; To do the right thing at the right time
16. To hold water; To sound logical
17. To live from hand to mouth; To live with great difficulty
18. To make up one's mind; To decide
19. To see eye to eye with; Agree
20. To play ducks and drakes; Waste
21. To put the cart before the horse; To do a thing in a wrong way
22. To have too many irons in the fire; To have too many things in hand
23. To read b/w the lines; To try to understand the hidden meaning
24. To turn over a new leaf; To change for the better
25. To take the bull by horns; To face difficulties boldly
26. To win laurels; To distinguish oneself
27. At daggers drawn; At enmity or fighting
28. Black and white; Written
29. By leaps and bounds; Very fast
30. In cold blood; deliberately
31. Laid up with; Confined to bed
32. Ins and outs; Full details
33. A black sheep; Scoundrel; a bad person
34. A cock and bull story; An absurd tale
35. A gala day; A day of festivity; a holiday with rejoicing
36. A hard nut to crack; A difficult person or problem to deal with
37. A turn coat; One who changes one's opinion or party
38. A fool's paradise; In a state of happiness founded on vain hopes
39. Beat a retreat; To retire before the enemy
40. To be on the horns of a dilemma; To have a choice b/w two equal evils

- (a) in the memory of a little child
- (b) on the death of someone dear
- (c) on the sighting of an old tutor
- (d) in the love of dear sweetheart

ANSWER: (b)

2013

Q 71) 'ALLUSION' means:

- (a) An idea hunting one's mind.
- (b) A casual or indirect reference
- (c) A mention of the bygone events
- (d) A dream one wants to have again.

HINT: Expression designed to call something to mind without mentioning it explicitly.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 72) In a composition writing exercise, 'PRECISE' means:

- (a) A synopsis for writing and essay in a degree level examination.
- (b) A critique highlighting the weak points of feature film story.
- (c) A resume of the commercial achievements spread over a year.
- (d) A short summary of the crucial ideas of a longer composition.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 73) 'APPRAISE' means:

- (a) Tell a story at bet time
- (b) Evaluate the quality of
- (c) Do shopping in a bazaar
- (d) Praise a man out of place

HINT: judge, estimate

ANSWER: (b)

Q 74) An 'ELGY' is a poem written:

- (a) In the memory of a little child.
- (b) On the sighting of an old tutor.
- (c) In the level of dear sweetheart.
- (d) On the death of someone dear.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 75) 'DENOUNCE' means:

- (a) To reject straightaway
- (b) To praise in a meeting
- (c) To condemn publically
- (d) To negotiate secretly

ANSWER: (c)

2011

Q 76) The authorities have _____ that the plane to Beirut was hijacked over the Indian ocean

- (a) assured (b) confirmed
- (c) committed (d) ensured

HINT: "Confirmed" is the best choice according to sentence structure.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 77) I have no _____ to listen to the budget speech.

- (a) trouble (b) convenience
- (c) patience (d) perseverance

HINT: "Patience" best fits. It means courage to listen
ANSWER: (c)

Q 78) A good business man should not be _____ while making profits.
The underlined word means:

- (a) Unprincipled (b) Careless
- (c) Illegal (d) Miserly

HINT: "Unscrupulous" means careless person

ANSWER: (b)

Q 79) 'Cynic' and '_____' are synonyms.

- (a) Skeptic (b) Secret
- (c) Solitary (d) Truthful

HINT: Cynic and skeptic are synonyms which means narrow minded people.

ANSWER: (a)

Q 80) 'Professional' and '_____' are antonyms.

- (a) Unemployed (b) Entrepreneur
- (c) Amateur (d) Capitalist

HINT: The opposite of Professional is Amateur.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 81) Secrets leak when the _____ are many

- (a) enemies (b) ill-wishers
- (c) confidants (d) detractors

HINT: Confidants are those people on whom one trusts. When there are too many confidants, greater are the chances for the secret to be disclosed.

ANSWER: (c)

Q 82) The guard looked at me _____ and then asked me to identify myself.

- (a) dangerously (b) hurriedly
- (c) suspiciously (d) nervously

HINT: "Suspiciously" means doubtfully.

ANSWER: (c)

- (a) Retreat (b) Convict
(c) Conceal (d) Deprive

ANSWER: (b)

Q 52) Hussain suffers from no _____ about his capabilities.

- (a) Doubts (b) hallucinations
(c) illusion (d) imaginations

ANSWER: (c)

Q 53) The antonym for the word "ACQUIT" is

- (a) Retreat (b) Convict
(c) Conceal (d) Deprive

ANSWER: (b)

2016

Q 54) Choose the word most similar in meaning to the capitalized word "OBLITERATE":

- (a) Offend (b) Haul
(c) Rent (d) Destroy

HINT: The word "obliterate" means to destroy.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 55) The revolution in art has not lost its steam, it _____ on as fiercely as ever:

- (a) Trudges (b) Meanders
(c) Ambles (d) Rages

HINT: "Meander" is used for the movement water normally.

ANSWER: (b)

Q 56) Choose the word opposite in meaning to the capitalized word "TANGIBLE"

- (a) Embodied (b) Conceptual
(c) Phenomenal (d) Verifiable

HINT: All options are almost synonyms except (d)

ANSWER: (d)

Q 57) Choose the word opposite in meaning to the capitalized word "ANARCHIC"

- (a) Riotous (b) Turbulent
(c) Disordered (d) Organized

HINT: "Anarchic" is from "anarchy" which means chaos, trouble in a country.

ANSWER: (d)

Q 58) Choose the word most similar in meaning to the capitalized word "PRODIGIOUS"

- (a) Enormous (b) Sacred
(c) Seismic (d) Tiny

HINT: "Prodigious" means "big in size"

ANSWER: (a)

Q 59) The candidate _____ when asked why he had left his last job; he did not want to admit that he had been dismissed.

- (a) Demurred (b) Confided
(c) Dissembled (d) Rejoiced

HINT: Dissembled means to hide expression

ANSWER: (c)

2015

Q 60) "Frown on somebody" means to:

- (a) Fall flat upon a stranger
(b) Stay alive working hard
(c) Unable to be successful
(d) Disapprove of somebody

ANSWER: (d)

Q 61) He extolled the virtues of the Russian people.

The underlined word means:

- (a) Admired (b) Praised
(c) Censured (d) Adopted

ANSWER: (b)

Q 62) The rising price of electricity has _____ affected the less fortunate.

- (a) positively (b) not
(c) adversely (d) slowly

ANSWER: (c)

2014

Q 63) 'CHUCKLE' means:

- (a) Bouquet of flowers (b) Displeasing manner
(c) Suppressed laughter (d) Religious movement

ANSWER: (c)

Q 64) 'ARABLE' means:

- (a) not grown since long
(b) recently ploughed field
(c) watered the night before (d) fit for cultivation

ANSWER: (d)

Q 65) A _____ child, she was soon bored in the class; she already knew more mathematics than her junior school teachers.

- (a) contemporary (b) lethargic
(c) obdurate (d) precocious

ANSWER: (d)

Q 66) 'ACQUAINTANCE' means a person whom:

- (a) one loves but whom one cannot marry
(b) one knows but who is not a close friend
(c) one can depend on for help in hour of need
(d) one can hire for attempting a question paper

ANSWER: (b)

Q 67) The Committee dissented from the report's conclusions. The underlined word means:

- (a) Differed (b) Joined
(c) Deliberated (d) Agreed

ANSWER: (a)

Q 68) 'APPRAISE' means:

- (a) praise a man out of place
(b) tell a story at bed time
(c) evaluate the quality of
(d) do shopping in a bazaar

ANSWER: (c)

Q 69) 'Mortal stay' implies:

- (a) life that a man will have after death
(b) life spent in the company of friends
(c) life spent in hostel without studying
(d) life in this world which is short-lived

ANSWER: (d)

Q 70) An 'elegy' is a poem written:

- Q. 73) (a) noxious
(c) open
reprisal
(a) accusation
(c) retaliation
- Q. 74) manifold
(a) evident
(c) diverse
- Q. 75) glare is most similar to
(a) scowl
(c) display
- Q. 76) erratic is most similar to
(a) enticing
(c) difficult
- Q. 77) civil is most similar to
(a) unkind
(c) public
- Q. 78) peer is most similar to
(a) apple
(c) fellow
- Q. 79) fiasco is most similar to
(a) festival
(c) happenstance
- Q. 80) chasm is most similar to
(a) gorge
(c) bridle
- Q. 81) expertise is most similar to
(a) activity
(c) mastery
- Q. 82) outlandish is most similar to
(a) distant
(c) pastoral
- Q. 83) exploit is most similar to
(a) answer
(c) accident
- (b) illicit
(d) undecided
- (b) loathe
(d) insinuation
- (b) contemporary
(d) willing
- (b) hide
(d) summon
- (b) frequent
(d) irregular
- (b) trite
(d) questionable
- (b) connote
(d) recluse
- (b) disaster
(d) ceremony
- (b) charm
(d) criticize
- (b) courage
(d) effort
- (b) absurd
(d) belligerent
- (b) feat
(d) persuade

EXERCISE: 12.2
ANTONYMS MCQs:

- Q. 84) mite
(a) weakness
(c) bulk
- Q. 85) supernal
(a) nocturnal
(c) despicable
- Q. 86) reprobate
(a) sage
(c) possess
- Q. 87) specious
(a) genuine
(c) common
- Q. 88) effete
(a) conquer
(c) prosperous
- Q. 89) rabble
(a) order
(c) open
- (b) tend
(d) drive
- (b) special
(d) hellish
- (b) elevated
(d) dismiss
- (b) logical
(d) deliberate
- (b) proper
(d) civilized
- (b) clear
(d) union

- Q. 90) protean
(a) unformed
(c) elaborate
- Q. 91) vertiginous
(a) horizontal
(c) constant
- Q. 92) parvenu
(a) wallflower
(c) melody
- Q. 93) tragic
(a) boring
(c) comic
- Q. 94) able
(a) willful
(c) careful
- Q. 95) tireless
(a) exhausted
(c) broke
- Q. 96) wean
(a) flourish
(c) strengthen
- Q. 97) haste
(a) delay
(c) debauchery
- Q. 98) malice
(a) goodwill
(c) coddle
- Q. 99) permanent
(a) loose
(c) fleeting
- Q. 100) attain
(a) crave
(c) harbor
- Q. 101) taint
(a) cheer
(c) clear
- Q. 102) belittle
(a) plain
(c) magnify
- Q. 103) tedious
(a) unwavering
(c) horrible
- Q. 104) license
(a) restriction
(c) join
- Q. 105) frivolous
(a) pious
(c) serious
- Q. 106) plain
(a) meadow
(c) lovely
- Q. 107) denounce
(a) covet
(c) blame
- Q. 108) contrary
(b) unchanging
(d) selective
- (b) litigious
(d) lowly
- (b) highway
(d) plan
- (b) mysterious
(d) incredulous
- (b) inept
(d) feasible
- (b) unfailing
(d) driving
- (b) flush
(d) addict
- (b) frugal
(d) solemnity
- (b) bitterness
(d) distress
- (b) fierce
(d) unhappy
- (b) lose
(d) credit
- (b) worry
(d) purify
- (b) detract
(d) torment
- (b) frightening
(d) pleasurable
- (b) allow
(d) gather
- (b) inexpensive
(d) contemptuous
- (b) ugly
(d) unadorned
- (b) condemn
(d) deplore

- Q. 36) querulous is most similar to
(a) nauseous (b) fretful
(c) curious (d) dizzy
- Q. 37) wrath
(a) knot (b) anger
(c) crime (d) smoke
- Q. 38) plethora
(a) trouble (b) foolish
(c) wealth (d) love
- Q. 39) calamity
(a) potion (b) silence
(c) shellfish (d) disaster
- Q. 40) pompous
(a) arrogant (b) supportive
(c) busy (d) gaudy
- Q. 41) prevalent
(a) wind (b) servile
(c) widespread (d) rare
- Q. 42) wince
(a) flinch (b) cheer
(c) crush (d) solitary
- Q. 43) superficial
(a) gorgeous (b) shallow
(c) intelligent (d) rich
- Q. 44) tangle
(a) snarl (b) growl
(c) dance (d) shiver
- Q. 45) reform
(a) punish (b) destroy
(c) display (d) correct
- Q. 46) methodical
(a) rhythmic (b) poetic
(c) systematic (d) disrespectful
- Q. 47) spite
(a) joy (b) beverage
(c) wonder (d) malice
- Q. 48) scale
(a) climb (b) sail
(c) swim (d) skate
- Q. 49) smudge
(a) gloat (b) residue
(c) blur (d) celebrate
- Q. 50) drizzle
(a) curly (b) sprinkle
(c) sear (d) drench
- Q. 51) mundane
(a) dirty (b) commonplace
(c) confused (d) extraordinary
- Q. 52) pretension
(a) stress (b) ambition
(c) waste (d) strife
- Q. 53) affect
(a) outcome (b) share
(c) pompous (d) cultivate
- Q. 54) herald
(a) insignia (b) postpone
(c) hail (d) regal
- Q. 55) faculty
(a) defective (b) school
(c) gift (d) desire
- Q. 56) mirth
(a) anger (b) glee
(c) sarcasm (d) mistrust
- Q. 57) drudgery
(a) silliness (b) labor
(c) evil (d) investigation
- Q. 58) prerequisite
(a) necessary (b) course
(c) difficult (d) tar
- Q. 59) dire
(a) questionable (b) forthright
(c) traitor (d) urgent
- Q. 60) grapple
(a) struggle (b) trap
(c) laugh (d) intend
- Q. 61) sundry
(a) aged (b) supply
(c) various (d) tremendous
- Q. 62) supplant
(a) grow (b) replace
(c) undo (d) question
- Q. 63) venerate
(a) ordain (b) breathe
(c) polish (d) revere
- Q. 64) conciliate
(a) appease (b) disagree
(c) revive (d) separate
- Q. 65) exultant
(a) afraid (b) jubilant
(c) expectant (d) demanding
- Q. 66) surreptitious
(a) overbearing (b) clandestine
(c) indirect (d) impious
- Q. 67) recalcitrant
(a) hesitant (b) subdued
(c) unruly (d) subtract
- Q. 68) coterie
(a) various (b) flirtation
(c) club (d) socialize
- Q. 69) nefarious
(a) infamous (b) macabre
(c) evil (d) distinguished
- Q. 70) curry
(a) flatter (b) spicy
(c) squander (d) game
- Q. 71) preternatural
(a) immature (b) extraordinary
(c) removed (d) unearned
- Q. 72) pernicious

LESSON NO. 12 EXERCISE MCQS

EXERCISE: 12.1
SYNONYMS MCQs:

- Q. 1) misprize
(a) despise (b) devalue
(c) erroneous (d) covet
- Q. 2) impugn
(a) imply (b) fret
(c) assail (d) recalcitrant
- Q. 3) supervene
(a) intervene (b) overreach
(c) displace (d) follow
- Q. 4) exigent
(a) urgent (b) treatise
(c) miser (d) expedient
- Q. 5) fervid
(a) delightful (b) difficult
(c) obstinate (d) ardent
- Q. 6) ersatz
(a) chaotic (b) artificial
(c) impromptu (d) vague
- Q. 7) redolent
(a) ubiquitous (b) odorous
(c) shy (d) bellicose
- Q. 8) turpitude
(a) lethargy (b) honor
(c) belligerence (d) depravity
- Q. 9) propinquity
(a) habit (b) nearness
(c) capacity (d) tendency
- Q. 10) vociferous
(a) numerous (b) bountiful
(c) strident (d) garrulous
- Q. 11) delirious is most similar to
(a) manic (b) calm
(c) tasty (d) suspicious
- Q. 12) infirm is most similar to
(a) hospital (b) weak
(c) short (d) fortitude
- Q. 13) lure is most similar to
(a) tickle (b) decoy
(c) resist (d) suspect
- Q. 14) isolation is most similar to
(a) fear (b) plentitude
(c) solitude (d) disease
- Q. 15) lull is most similar to
(a) pause (b) noise
(c) boring (d) mark
- Q. 16) outfit is most similar to
(a) indoors (b) strong
(c) special (d) furnish
- Q. 17) omit is most similar to
(a) recluse (b) neglect
(c) mistake (d) destroy
- Q. 18) mutiny is most similar to
(a) rebellion (b) currency
(c) sailor (d) hassle
- Q. 19) naive is most similar to
(a) rural (b) secular
(c) unsophisticated (d) sultry
- Q. 20) solemnity is most similar to
(a) lightheartedness (b) gravity
(c) diligence (d) sleepiness
- Q. 21) impudent is most similar to
(a) cautious (b) haphazard
(c) gleeful (d) insolent
- Q. 22) lambaste is most similar to
(a) marinade (b) commotion
(c) censure (d) tickle
- Q. 23) rudimentary is most similar to
(a) crass (b) gracious
(c) deliberate (d) primitive
- Q. 24) pitched is most similar to
(a) undone (b) retracted
(c) heated (d) lovely
- Q. 25) largesse is most similar to
(a) greatness (b) generosity
(c) miniscule (d) clumsiness
- Q. 26) insidious is most dissimilar to
(a) repellant (b) pure
(c) charming (d) delicious
- Q. 27) decorum is most similar to
(a) etiquette (b) merit
(c) parliament (d) slipshod
- Q. 28) succor is most dissimilar to
(a) genius (b) abet
(c) injure (d) deciduous
- Q. 29) enjoin is most dissimilar to
(a) sever (b) dislike
(c) permit (d) divorce
- Q. 30) tumid is most similar to
(a) swollen (b) fetid
(c) aggressive (d) despondent
- Q. 31) jejune is most similar to
(a) youthful (b) insipid
(c) charming (d) quick
- Q. 32) ecumenical is most dissimilar to
(a) spiritual (b) humanistic
(c) secular (d) parochial
- Q. 33) sinecure is most similar to
(a) cakewalk (b) serpentine
(c) evil (d) dishonest
- Q. 34) castigate is most similar to
(a) neuter (b) punish
(c) banish (d) celebrate
- Q. 35) obloquy is most similar to
(a) tirade (b) dependence

LESSON NO. 12 EXERCISE ANSWERS

Synonyms Key:

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. d
6. b
7. b
8. d
9. b
10. c
11. a
12. b
13. b
14. c
15. a
16. d
17. b

18. a
19. c
20. b
21. d
22. c
23. d
24. c
25. b
26. a
27. a
28. c
29. c
30. a
31. b
32. b
33. a
34. b

35. a
36. b
37. b
38. c
39. d
40. a
41. c
42. a
43. b
44. a
45. d
46. c
47. d
48. a
49. c
50. b
51. b

52. b
53. d
54. c
55. c
56. b
57. b
58. a
59. d
60. a
61. c
62. b
63. d
64. a
65. b
66. b
67. c
68. c

69. c
70. a
71. b
72. a
73. c
74. c
75. a
76. d
77. c
78. c
79. b
80. a
81. c
82. b
83. b

Antonyms Key:

84. c
85. d
86. b
87. a
88. b
89. d
90. b
91. c
92. a
93. c
94. b
95. a
96. d
97. a
98. a
99. c
100. b

101. d
102. c
103. d
104. a
105. c
106. c
107. a
108. b
109. b
110. b
111. d
112. b
113. b
114. a
115. d
116. a
117. a

118. d
119. c
120. d
121. d
122. d
123. b
124. a
125. b
126. c
127. b
128. d
129. a
130. b
131. c
132. c
133. d
134. a

135. c
136. d
137. a
138. b
139. c
140. d
141. b
142. b
143. a
144. c
145. a
146. b
147. d
148. a
149. c
150. b
151. c

152. b
153. b
154. a
155. b
156. c
157. a
158. b
159. c
160. a
161. d
162. c
163. b
164. c
165. b
166. a

- Q. 145) paucity is most dissimilar to
 (a) excess (b) certainty
 (c) timidity (d) beauty
- Q. 146) heedless is most dissimilar to
 (a) heartless (b) attentive
 (c) speedy (d) unaware
- Q. 147) abound is most dissimilar to
 (a) rest (b) discourage
 (c) bless (d) dwindle
- Q. 148) confederate is most dissimilar to
 (a) enemy (b) confuse
 (c) wander (d) cluster
- Q. 149) resplendent is most dissimilar to
 (a) illuminated (b) disarming
 (c) dowdy (d) delightful
- Q. 150) onerous is most dissimilar to
 (a) permissive (b) easy
 (c) unforgiving (d) public
- Q. 151) sagacity is most dissimilar to
 (a) incredulity (b) belligerence
 (c) stupidity (d) tolerance
- Q. 152) dilettante is most dissimilar to
 (a) puritan (b) professional
 (c) aesthete (d) conniver
- Q. 153) unalloyed is most dissimilar to
 (a) dismayed (b) impure
 (c) circumspect (d) disastrous
- Q. 154) banner is most dissimilar to
 (a) forgettable (b) casual
 (c) unrestrained (d) unwitting
- Q. 155) scurrilous is most dissimilar to
 (a) honest (b) decent
 (c) peaceful (d) satisfactory
- Q. 156) dyspeptic is most dissimilar to
 (a) trusting (b) functional
 (c) euphoric (d) talented
- Q. 157) prolix is most dissimilar to
 (a) brief (b) exquisite
 (c) reasonable (d) distinct
- Q. 158) subsequent
 (a) aloof (b) previous
 (c) following (d) dismissive
- Q. 159) abrupt
 (a) continue (b) laudable
 (c) anticipated (d) careless
- Q. 160) conserve
 (a) waste (b) silence
 (c) liberal (d) complicate
- Q. 161) erode
 (a) compost (b) clarify
 (c) ignore (d) restore
- Q. 162) recall
 (a) rebate (b) demonstrate
 (c) forget (d) despise
- Q. 163) dormant

- (a) clever (b) active
 (c) dreamy (d) invisible
- Q. 164) procrastinate
 (a) lengthen (b) soothe
 (c) hurry (d) demolish
- Q. 165) docile
 (a) intelligent (b) unruly
 (c) unreachable (d) pale
- Q. 166) impromptu
 (a) rehearsed (b) bizarre
 (c) foolish (d) disarming

- (a) urbane
(c) unpleasant

Q. 109) glower

- (a) prairie
(c) raise

Q. 110) exacting

- (a) upright
(c) sober

Q. 111) curtail

- (a) remain
(c) placate

Q. 112) eminent

- (a) imminent
(c) retire

Q. 113) abdicate

- (a) deny
(c) blame

Q. 114) indolent

- (a) industrious
(c) native

Q. 115) fortuitous

- (a) undefended
(c) deliberate

Q. 116) disparage

- (a) hesitate
(c) trouble

Q. 117) dubious

- (a) reliable
(c) rhythmic

Q. 118) interdict

- (a) continue
(c) wallow

Q. 119) mendacious

- (a) bashful
(c) veracious

Q. 120) lassitude

- (a) release
(c) fatigue

Q. 121) verdant

- (a) dishonest
(c) moldy

Q. 122) ductile

- (a) unfeeling
(c) precious

Q. 123) asperity

- (a) moistness
(c) sour

Q. 124) epicurean

- (a) ascetic
(c) imprecision

Q. 125) traduce

- (a) deduce
(c) presuppose

Q. 126) bridle

- (a) heckle

- (b) agreeable
(d) despicable

- (b) smile
(d) throw

- (b) lenient
(d) general

- (b) detain
(d) prolong

- (b) obscure
(d) unsure

- (b) usurp
(d) renounce

- (b) complimentary
(d) smooth

- (b) gratuitous
(d) impoverished

- (b) settle
(d) applaud

- (b) pleasing
(d) careful

- (b) abstain
(d) sanction

- (b) capacious
(d) quiet

- (b) demure
(d) vigor

- (b) suspicious
(d) arid

- (b) arrogant
(d) rigid

- (b) amenity
(d) generosity

- (b) slovenly
(d) providential

- (b) laud
(d) converge

- (b) dissuade

- (c) vent

Q. 127) proclivity

- (a) calm
(c) desire

Q. 128) vituperation

- (a) alacrity
(c) reparation

Q. 129) gambol

- (a) trudge
(c) crone

Q. 130) quixotic

- (a) simple
(c) passé

Q. 131) lachrymose

- (a) quick
(c) blithe

Q. 132) prudent is most dissimilar to

- (a) simple
(c) foolish

Q. 133) forced is most dissimilar to

- (a) quick
(c) trusting

Q. 134) acquaint is most dissimilar to

- (a) alienate
(c) bleach

Q. 135) expansive is most dissimilar to

- (a) generous
(c) narrow

Q. 136) benign is most dissimilar to

- (a) malignant
(c) cautious

Q. 137) foster is most dissimilar to

- (a) discourage
(c) heal

Q. 138) ample is most dissimilar to

- (a) complete
(c) quiet

Q. 139) deviant is most dissimilar to

- (a) winding
(c) normal

Q. 140) abolish is most dissimilar to

- (a) vote
(c) avoid

Q. 141) forsake is most dissimilar to

- (a) craft
(c) shun

Q. 142) tractable is most dissimilar to

- (a) invisible
(c) unadvisable

Q. 143) dexterous is most dissimilar to

- (a) clumsy
(c) cunning

Q. 144) aerate is most dissimilar to

- (a) argue
(c) suffocate

- (d) persist

- (b) antipathy
(d) dearth

- (b) alertness
(d) acclaim

- (b) hedge
(d) misplace

- (b) staid
(d) unpredictable

- (b) loquacious
(d) plentiful

- (b) rapid
(d) verbose

- (b) solid
(d) natural

- (b) luxurious
(d) stall

- (b) honest
(d) troublesome

- (b) converse
(d) malicious

- (b) believe
(d) brag

- (b) insufficient
(d) supple

- (b) careful
(d) sad

- (b) punish
(d) establish

- (b) embrace
(d) infer

- (b) stubborn
(d) special

- (b) saline
(d) precious

- (b) placate
(d) destroy

unmaking it. Suddenly, I realized that every time I gave up the idea of writing, that sinking feeling went through me; it gave me the blues.

The thought of graduate school wasn't what depressed me. It was giving up on what deep in my gut I really wanted to do. Right then I learned another lesson to avoid that kind of depression meant, inevitably, having to endure a certain amount of worry and concern. The great Danish philosopher Soren Kierkegaard believed that anxiety always arises when we confront the possibility of our own development. It seems to be a rule of life that you can't advance without getting that old, familiar, jittery feeling. Even as children we discover this when we try to expand ourselves by, say, learning to ride a bike or going out for the school play. Later in life we get butterflies when we think about having that first child, or uprooting the family from the old hometown to find a better opportunity halfway across the country. Any time, it seems, that we set out aggressively to get something we want, we meet up with anxiety. And it's going to be our traveling companion, at least part of the way, into any new venture.

When I first began writing magazine articles, I was frequently required to interview big names. Before each interview I would get butterflies and my hands would shake. At the time, I was doing some writing about music. And one person I particularly admired was the great composer Duke Ellington. On stage and on television, he seemed the very model of the confident, sophisticated man of the world. Then I learned that Ellington still got stage fright. If the highly honored Duke Ellington, who had appeared on the bandstand some 10,000 times over 30 years, had anxiety attacks, who was I to think I could avoid them? I went on doing those frightening interviews, and one day, as I was getting onto a plane for Washington to interview columnist Joseph Alsop, I suddenly realized to my astonishment that I was looking forward to the meeting. What had happened to those butterflies? Well, in truth, they were still there, but there were fewer of them. I had benefited, I discovered, from a process psychologists call "extinction." If you put an individual in an anxiety-provoking situation often enough, he will eventually learn that there isn't anything to be worried about. Which brings us to a corollary to my basic rule: *you'll never eliminate anxiety by avoiding the things that caused it.* I remember how my son Jeff was when I first began to teach him to swim at the lake cottage where we spent our summer vacations. He resisted, and when I got him into the water he sank and spluttered and wanted to quit. But I was insistent. And by summer's end he was splashing around like a puppy. He had "extinguished" his anxiety the only way he could -- by confronting it.

—James Lincoln Collier

- 1) In the beginning, what kind of anxiety is the author talking about?
- 2) Why should we do what makes us anxious and not do what makes us depressed?
- 3) What is meant by "to have butterflies in the stomach?"
- 4) Which thought depressed the author?
- 5) In the above passage, what is meant by "extinction?" Compare the meaning you find in the passage with the meaning of the same word you will find in a dictionary.

Reading Selection 5

(An Open Letter to People Who Talk Too Much)

What is the reward for dominating conversations? Dear person who has been talking for six-and-a-half minutes without taking a breath, I am writing on behalf of everyone who has ever sat across from you and wondered if there was any end to the stream of words pouring from your mouth. And I am putting it in writing because I can't seem to force a word in edgewise in this... Well, I hesitate to call it a conversation.

I know that telling people they talk too much is considered rude—although is it really any ruder than drowning your listeners in words?

In situations like this, I remind myself that talking too much is an anxiety thing, that you're just spewing all this information at me because you're nervous and letting words out is a pressure release. With this in mind I try to keep my head in sympathetic mode, and to somehow exude calming vibes that might allow you to relax so this onslaught will taper off.

It's not working.

And so I sit here, nodding, eyes glazed, trying to quell the panic building in my breast. And I wonder how it is you don't notice my unfocused gaze, the muscle working in my jaw, the many times my mouth has opened hopefully—grasping at any perceived opportunity to squeeze out a thought—and then shut again as your run-on sentences run on and on and on in a marathon monologue.

Please. I beg you with the salt of a thousand tears. Stop talking.

Honestly, I don't think I produce as many words in a week as you have produced in the (surreptitiously checks time) 12 minutes we've been sitting here while you tell me things.

Do your stories really require this level of detail? Do you really expect me to follow you down every rabbit

The successful photographer also has something tangible to show for his efforts. A still picture of an animal can be displayed in a home, a gallery, a shop; it can be printed in a publication, as a postcard, or as a poster. In fact, a single photograph can be used in all these ways at once; it can be reproduced countless times. And despite all these ways of using his "trophies," the photographer continues to preserve his prey.

—Barbara Bowman

- 1) What are the similarities between a photographer and a hunter?
- 2) What is the fundamental difference between the hunter and the photographer that the author focuses on?
- 3) For the hunter is the gun more important or the hunt? Similarly, for the photographer, is the picture more important or the camera?
- 4) The author says "it frequently becomes an end." In what sense does he use the word "end"?
- 5) What is your opinion about hunting as a sport or hobby? Discuss.

Reading Selection 3

One swallow does not make a summer, nor can two or three cases often support a dependable generalization. Yet all of us, including the most polished eggheads, are constantly falling into this mental people-trap. It is the most common, probably the most seductive, and potentially the most dangerous, of all the fallacies.

You drive through a town and see a drunken man on the sidewalk. A few blocks further on you see another. You turn to your companion: "Nothing but drunks in this town!" Soon you are out of the country, bowling along at fifty. A car passes you as if you were parked. On a curve a second whizzes by. Your companion turns to you: "All the drivers in this state are crazy!" Two thumping generalizations, each built on two cases. If we stop to think, we usually recognize the exaggeration and the unfairness of such generalizations. Trouble comes when we do not stop to think—or when we build them on a prejudice.

This kind of reasoning has been around for a long time. Aristotle was aware of its dangers and called it "reasoning by example," meaning too few examples. What it boils down to is failing to count your swallows before announcing that summer is here. Driving from my home to New Haven the other day, a distance of about forty miles, I caught myself saying: "Every time I look around I see a new ranch-type house going up." So on the return trip I counted them; there were exactly five under construction. And how many times had I "looked around"? I suppose I had glanced to right and left—as one must at side roads and so forth in driving—several hundred times.

In this fallacy we do not make the error of neglecting facts altogether and rushing immediately to the level of opinion. We start at the fact level properly enough, but we do not stay there. A case of two and up we go to a rousing oversimplification about drunks, speeders, ranch-style houses—or, more seriously, about foreigners, African Americans, labor leaders, teen-agers.

Why do we over-generalize so often and sometimes so disastrously? One reason is that the human mind is a generalizing machine. We would not be people without this power. The old academic crack: "All generalizations are false, including this one," is only a play on words. We *must* generalize to communicate and to live. But we should beware of beating the gun; of not waiting until enough facts are in to say something useful. Meanwhile it is a plain waste of time to listen to arguments based on a few handpicked examples.

—Stuart Chase

- 1) What is meant by "one swallow does not make a summer?"
- 2) What is meant by prejudice? Give examples.
- 3) What is meant by the phrasal verb "to boil down to"? Use the phrasal verb in more than two sentences.
- 4) After having read the above, can you satisfactorily define an over-generalization?
- 5) How can over-generalizations become dangerous? Discuss and exemplify.

Reading Selection 4

Do what makes you anxious; don't do what makes you depressed. I am not, of course, talking about severe states of anxiety or depression, which require medical attention. What I mean is that kind of anxiety we call stage fright, butterflies in the stomach, a case of nerves—the feelings we have at a job interview, when we're giving a big party, when we have to make an important presentation at the office. And the kind of depression I am referring to is that downhearted feeling of the blues, when we don't seem to be interested in anything, when we can't get going and seem to have no energy.

I was confronted by this sort of situation toward the end of my senior year. As graduation approached, I began to think about taking a crack at making my living as a writer. But one of my professors was urging me to apply to graduate school and aim at a teaching career.

I wavered. The idea of trying to live by writing was scary. Back and forth I went, making my decision,

LESSON NO. 13

COMPREHENSION

KEY POINTS

Note: Read the following passages/extracts/essays carefully and answer the questions at the end of each reading.

Reading Selection 1

Choosing between negative alternatives often seems like no choice at all. Take the case of a woman trying to decide whether to stay married to her inconsiderate, incompetent husband, or get a divorce. She doesn't want to stay with him, but she feels divorce is a sign of failure and will stigmatize her socially. Or think of the decision faced by many young men [more than forty] years ago, when they were forced to choose between leaving their country and family or being sent to Vietnam.

When we face decisions involving only alternatives we see as negatives, we feel so little freedom that we twist and turn searching for another choice with some positive characteristics. Freedom is a popular word. Individuals talk about how they feel free with one person and not with another, or how their bosses encourage or discourage freedom on the job. We hear about civil wars and revolutions being fought for greater freedom, with both sides righteously making the claim. The feeling of freedom is so important that people say they're ready to die for it, and supposedly have. Still, most people have trouble coming up with a precise definition of freedom. They give answers describing specific situations — "Freedom means doing what I want to do, not what the Government wants me to do," or "Freedom means not having my mother tell me when to come home from a party" — rather than a general definition covering many situations. The idea they seem to be expressing is that freedom is associated with making decisions, and that other people sometimes limit the number of alternatives from which they can select.

—Jerald M. Jellison and John H. Harvey

- 1) When do individuals feel free?
- 2) What is meant by being stigmatized socially?
- 3) Could you give more examples of being faced with negative alternatives?
- 4) What do you think is the central idea of the reading above?
- 5) What, according to you, is meant by freedom? Discuss.

Reading Selection 2

The hunter has a deep interest in the apparatus he uses to kill his prey. He carries various types of guns, different kinds of ammunition, and special sights and telescopes to increase his chances of success. He knows the mechanics of his guns and understands how and why they work. This fascination with the hardware of his sport is practical — it helps him achieve his goal — but it frequently becomes an end, almost a hobby in itself. Not until the very end of the long process of stalking an animal does a game hunter use his gun. First he enters into the animal's world. He studies his prey, its habitat, its daily habits, its watering holes and feeding areas, its migration patterns, its enemies and allies, its diet and food chain. Eventually the hunter himself becomes animal-like, instinctively sensing the habits and moves of his prey. Of course, this instinct gives the hunter a better chance of killing the animal; he knows where and when he will get the best shot. But it gives him more than that. Hunting is not just pulling the trigger and killing the prey. Much of it is a multifaceted and ritualistic identification with nature.

After the kill, the hunter can do a number of things with his trophy. He can sell the meat or eat it himself. He can hang the animal's head on the wall or lay its hide on the floor or even sell these objects. But any of these uses is a luxury, and its cost is high. An animal has been destroyed; a life has been eliminated.

Like the hunter, the photographer has a great interest in the tools he uses. He carries various types of cameras, lenses, and film to help him get the picture he wants. He understands the way cameras work, the uses of telephoto and micro lenses, and often the technical procedures of printing and developing. Of course, the time and interest a photographer invests in these mechanical aspects of his art allow him to capture and produce the image he wants. But as with the hunter, these mechanics can and often do become fascinating in themselves.

The wildlife photographer also needs to stalk his "prey" with knowledge and skill in order to get an accurate "shot." Like the hunter, he has to understand the animal's patterns, characteristics, and habitat; he must become animal-like in order to succeed. And like the hunter's, his pursuit is much more prolonged and complicated than the shot itself. The walking processes are almost identical and give many of the same satisfactions.

- (a) simile (b) Metonymy
(c) Metaphor (d) Apostrophe
- Q 17) All the world's a stage. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Apostrophe (d) Personification
- Q 18) My heart is a lonely hunter. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Metaphor (b) simile
(c) Apostrophe (d) Pun
- Q 19) The door shrieked as it was opened. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Personification (b) simile
(c) Metaphor (d) Synecdoche
- Q 20) The town handled against the foot of a steep cliff. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Personification (d) Pun
- Q 21) Small fires raced through the forests. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Irony (b) Simile
(c) Personification (d) Pun
- Q 22) The tired old car coughed and wheezed and crawled down the street. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Metonymy (b) Satire
(c) Sarcasm (d) Personification
- Q 23) That piece of chocolate cake is calling my name. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Personification (b) Apostrophe
(c) Pun (d) Sarcasm
- Q 24) The sun briefly regained its summer time power. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Simile (b) Personification
(c) Metaphor (d) Pun
- Q 25) Death is the mother of beauty. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Personification (d) Sarcasm
- Q 26) The slings and arrows of outrageous future harmed them. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Sarcasm (b) Sarcasm
(c) Personification (d) Pathetic Fallacy
- Q 27) That suitcase weighed a ton! The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Exaggeration (b) Understatement
(c) Personification (d) simile
- Q 28) She is going to die of embarrassment. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Hyperbole (b) Satire
(c) Metonymy (d) Sarcasm
- Q 29) I'll love you dear, I'll love you I'll China and Africa meet And the river jumps over the mountain The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Personification (d) Hyperbole
- Q 30) The room was lit with thousands of lights. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) simile (b) Personification
(c) Hyperbole (d) Pun
- Q 31) A boy has been admitted to the hospital. The nurse says "He's in good hands". The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Synecdoche (b) Metonymy
(c) simile (d) Metaphor
- Q 32) The department of education announced new plans for the education reform. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Synecdoche (b) simile
(c) Refrain (d) Metonymy
- Q 33) Prepare a face to meet the faces that you meet. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Metonymy (b) Simile
(c) Personification (d) Synecdoche
- Q 34) I know the voice dying with a dying fall beneath the music from a farther room.
(a) Pun (b) Satire
(c) Synecdoche (d) Sarcasm
- Q 35) Sally shipped on the slide and slid off sloppily. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Alliteration (b) Refrain
(c) Simile (d) Metaphor
- Q 36) Rivers rush and oceans crash, roar and thunder against the shore. The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Onomatopoeia (b) Alliteration
(c) Refrain (d) Simile
- Q 37) Dogs bark, ruff, woof, arf and how! The given sentence is an example of _____.
(a) Metaphor (b) Onomatopoeia
(c) Metonymy (d) Pun
- Q 38) Frogs croak, chirp and ribbit. The given sentence is an example of _____.

LESSON NO. 14

FIGURES OF SPEECH

A figure of speech is a word or expression that goes beyond the original/literal meaning of words in order to supply new effect or a fresh approach into an idea or a subject. For example: If a person says "I am so hungry that I could eat a goat". Now it does not mean that the person in reality can eat a whole goat rather he wants to show the intensity of his hunger.

Figures of speech are different from literal language as literal language gives only dictionary meaning. On the other hand, Figures of speech give associative meaning. Figure of speech are richer than literal language in their associations and effects both.

Purpose

The purpose of using Figures of speech is to provide emphasis, freshness of expression and clarity to the common use of language. They are used for decorating language and communicating the abstract and hard to understand ideas vividly and is easy to understand way. For example: One can say that he was suffering from pain. Instead of this sentence, one can say that he flapped like a fish out of water. Here, the expression becomes more vivid and attractive.

Q 1) The smile of this old man is as bright as the sun. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Personification (d) Metonymy

Q 2) He is as thin as a rail. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Metaphor (b) Simile
(c) Irony (d) Euphemism

Q 3) She moved like a deer. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Satire (b) Sarcasm
(c) Metaphor (d) Simile

Q 4) He sat as still as a mouse. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Synecdoche (d) Metonymy

Q 5) My heart is like a singing bird. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Irony (d) euphemism

Q 6) His heart was thumping like a drum. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Metaphor (b) simile
(c) Irony (d) Personification

Q 7) My mind is like an apple tree whose boughs are bent with the thickset fruit. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Pun (d) Irony

Q 8) Her dream is like a rainbow shell that paddles in a halcyon sea. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Irony (d) Euphemism

Q 9) The bureaucrat seems as hungry as a wolf. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Metonymy (b) Synecdoche
(c) Metaphor (d) simile

Q 10) The description of topic was as attractive as a rose. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Pun (d) Irony

Q 11) He is a sea of knowledge. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Pun (d) Synecdoche

Q 12) All regions, arts and sciences are branches of the same tree. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Pun (d) Metonymy

Q 13) She was a rock star at our last business presentation. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Euphemism (b) Satire
(c) Simile (d) Metaphor

Q 14) Best soft, what light through yonder window breaks? It is the east and Juliet is the sun. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Satire (d) Euphemism

Q 15) Our words are beast crumbs that fall down from the feast of the mind. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Personification (b) simile
(c) Pun (d) Metaphor

Q 16) I have eaten a bag of green apples. The given sentence is an example of _____.

hole of your thoughts? Do you really imagine I am enraptured by tales of your cousin's wife's first divorce?

What are you thinking? What are you accomplishing here? If we are all, as humans, motivated by rewards, what is the reward for you in monopolizing conversations? Really. I'm asking. Because I don't understand.

Of course, I am an extreme opposite. I tend to say only as much as necessary to get my point across and then stop. Sometimes I stop even before my point is clear and other people must prompt me to finish my sentences. I'm not in love with the sound of my own voice, and I get embarrassed when I find myself rambling, which I sometimes do. But all in all, I'd rather listen—up to a point.

And this makes your barrage of words even more baffling to me. How do you even do this? How do you keep talking so long and so hard for (checks time again) 17 solid minutes? Aren't you tired yet?

The sad thing is—I like you. You're a good person, a kind person, with a sharp mind and a quick wit. And so it truly pains me that after about 10 minutes with you, I would chew off my own leg to escape. It saddens me that this personality quirk, shall we call it, makes genuine friendship between us impossible.

I'm sorry to have to say all this. And I hope that not everyone feels as I do about you and your words. I hope that your life is filled with people who hang on your every utterance, from the first to the forty-seven thousandth. But I'm afraid I'm not among them. My head is now filled to bursting with all your words and I don't think I can stand it anymore.

I'm opening my mouth...

I'm interrupting you...

I'm saying...

"Excuse me, I have to go to the bathroom."

And I'm outta here.

-- Sophia Dembling

- 1) Why does the author dislike people who talk too much?
- 2) Does the author think that people who talk too much are less intelligent?
- 3) Why is the author reluctant in calling the mentioned form of communication as a conversation?
- 4) What is the difference between an introverted and an extroverted person? Which one are you?
- 5) What is your opinion about people who talk too much?

85) _____ is a figure of speech in which a statement gradually descends in order of importance.

- (a) Climax (b) Anticlimax
(c) Apostrophe (d) Assonance

86) _____ is the arrangement of events in the order of importance.

- (a) Climax (b) Anti-climax
(c) Ellipsis (d) Euphemism

Q 87) _____ is the omission of a word or words with dots.

- (a) Ellipsis (b) Assonance
(c) Consonance (d) Alliteration

Q 88) The white house has issued a report. The sentence is an example of

- (a) Metonymy (b) Synecdoche
(c) Metaphor (d) simile

LESSON NO. 14 SOLUTION KEY

S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans
1	a	16	c	31	a	46	a	61	a	76	c
2	b	17	b	32	a	47	a	62	c	77	a
3	d	18	a	33	d	48	b	63	b	78	b
4	a	19	a	34	c	49	a	64	a	79	d
5	a	20	c	35	a	50	b	65	b	80	a
6	b	21	c	36	a	51	d	66	c	81	d
7	a	22	d	37	b	52	c	67	d	82	c
8	a	23	a	38	a	53	a	68	a	83	d
9	d	24	b	39	b	54	b	69	a	84	a
10	a	25	c	40	a	55	c	70	a	85	b
11	b	26	c	41	a	56	b	71	a	86	a
12	b	27	a	42	b	57	d	72	b	87	a
13	d	28	a	43	a	58	b	73	a	88	a
14	b	29	d	44	d	59	a	74	c		
15	d	30	c	45	a	60	d	75	c		

ACADEMY
Estb - 1990

- (a) Exaggeration (b) Pun
(c) Cliché (d) Litotes

Q 61) A _____ is a poem with fourteen lines.

- (a) Sonnet (b) Ode
(c) Limerick (d) Ballad

Q 62) The poem having five lines is called _____

- (a) Sonnet (b) Ode
(c) Limerick (d) Ballad

Q 63) _____ is a poem that is written at the death of a person.

- (a) Ode (b) Elegy
(c) Epic (d) Sonnet

Q 64) An _____ is a self-written life story.

- (a) Autobiography (b) Biography
(c) Biopic (d) Data

Q 65) A _____ is the life story of one person written by another.

- (a) Autobiography (b) Biography
(c) Biopic (d) Data

Q 66) A short introductory section that gives background information or sets the stage for the story to come is called _____

- (a) Epilogue (b) Dialogue
(c) Prologue (d) Monologue

Q 67) _____ is a short speech addressed directly to the audience by an act at the end of the play.

- (a) Prologue (b) Monologue
(c) Dialogue (d) Epilogue

Q 68) _____ are the words having same pronunciation but different meaning.

- (a) Homophones (b) Homonyms
(c) Pronunciation (d) Accent

Q 69) A _____ is a joke based on the interplay of homophones.

- (a) Pun (b) Cliché
(c) Homophones (d) Homonyms

Q 70) A short passage added at the end of a literary work is called _____

- (a) Epilogue (b) Prologue
(c) Dialogue (d) Monologue

Q 71) She sells seashells. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (c) Alliteration (b) Homonyms
(c) Pronunciation (d) Accent

Q 72) _____ is a mild, indirect or vague term that often substitute a harsh, blunt or offensive term.

- (b) Euphemism (b) Prologue
(c) Dialogue (d) Monologue

Q 73) His soul has departed to heaven is an example of _____

- (a) Euphemism (b) Prologue
(c) Dialogue (d) Monologue

Q 74) I have told you to stop a thousand times is an example of _____

- (c) Hyperbole (b) Prologue
(c) Dialogue (d) Monologue

Q 75) _____ is the difference between appearance and reality.

- (c) Irony (b) Dialogue
(c) Prologue (d) Monologue

Q 76) _____ is a marked contrast between what is said and what is meant.

- (c) Irony (b) Dialogue
(c) Prologue (d) Monologue

Q 77) "How nice!" she said, when I told her that I had to work all weekend. This sentence has _____

- (a) Irony (b) Dialogue
(c) Prologue (d) Monologue

Q 78) A _____ makes comparison between two unlike things and ideas

- (b) Metaphor (b) Dialogue
(c) Prologue (d) Monologue

Q 79) A/An _____ is two contradictory terms used together

- (d) Oxymoron (b) Hyperbole
(c) simile (d) Pun

Q 80) Sweet sorrow is an example of _____

- (a) Oxymoron (b) Hyperbole
(c) simile (d) Pun

Q 81) The flowers nodded is an example of _____

- (a) Simile (b) Apostrophe
(c) Cliché (d) Personification

Q 82) _____ is when a part represents a whole or, conversely the whole is represented by the part

- (a) Exaggeration (b) Pun
(c) Synecdoche (d) Cliché

Q 83) My wheels are out of work is an example of _____

- (a) Hyperbole (b) Satire
(c) Irony (d) Synecdoche

Q 84) A/An _____ is a common phrase with a figurative meaning.

- (a) Idiom (b) Satire
(c) Irony (d) Synecdoche

- (a) Onomatopoeia (b) simile
(c) Metaphor (d) Satire

Q 39) Rain pitter-pitter, drips-drops. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) simile (b) Onomatopoeia
(c) Metonymy (d) Synecdoche

Q 40) He has been sent to a correctional facility. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Euphemism (b) Metaphor
(c) Personification (d) Apostrophe

Q 41) I did not have any bus fare, but fortunately some good Samaritan helped me. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Allusion (b) Synecdoche
(c) Metonymy (d) Pun

Q 42) An ellipsis is

- (a) A grammatical term that refers to a particular facial feature.
(b) A grammatical term that refers to the omission of words or phrases.
(c) A grammatical term that refers to stuttering.
(d) A grammatical term that refers to the length of a film.

Q 43) 'Word play' refers to

- (a) Pun (b) Double style
(c) Word gain (d) All of the above

Q 44) Homophones are _____

- (a) Words with different meaning.
(b) Words having similar meaning but are spelled differently.
(c) Words that can be pronounced in many different ways.
(d) Words have same sound but different spellings and meanings.

Q 45) The tallest building in town is library. It has thousands of stories. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Pun (b) Cliché
(c) Metaphor (d) Simile

Q 46) Diamond is rough is an example _____

- (a) Cliché (b) Pun
(c) Metaphor (d) Metonymy

Q 47) Every cloud has a silver lining is an example of

- (a) Cliché (b) Pun
(c) Simile (d) Apostrophe

Q 48) Don't judge a book by its covers is an example of _____

- (a) Pun (b) Cliché
(c) Homonyms (d) Metaphor

Q 49) There once was a son of duke.
Whose upbringing was really a fluke
He was raised by some gibbons
So all he can say now is "OOK".
The given poem is an example of _____.

- (a) Limerick (b) Sonnet
(c) Ode (d) Ballad

Q 50) All likes all alliterations. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Refrain (b) Alliteration
(c) Epilogue (d) Prologue

Q 51) Peter piper picked a pack of pickled peppers. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Assonance (b) Understatement
(c) Hyperbole (d) Alliteration

Q 52) Alice ate all of the apples in the afternoon. The given sentence is an example of _____.

- (a) Analogy (b) Pun
(c) Alliteration (d) Cliché

Q 53) _____ is used to express resemblance between things of different kinds usually by 'like' as 'as'.

- (a) Simile (b) Exaggeration
(c) Hyperbole (d) Metaphor

Q 54) _____ is used to express similarity between two dissimilar things.

- (a) Simile (b) Metaphor
(c) Exaggeration (d) Pun

Q 55) _____ is the repeatedly appearing of the same consonant sound in the same line.

- (a) Apostrophe (b) Personification
(c) Consonance (d) Pun

Q 56) _____ is the repetition of vowel sounds in a sentence.

- (a) Consonance (b) Assonance
(c) Pun (d) Cliché

Q 57) _____ is the using of those words that imitate the sound they denote.

- (a) simile (b) Assonance
(c) Pun (d) Onomatopoeia

Q 58) _____ is the giving of human attributes to the non-human.

- (a) Cliché (b) Personification
(c) Pun (d) Apostrophe

Q 59) Addressing a dead or absent object in poetry called _____

- (a) Apostrophe (b) Personification
(c) Assonance (d) Consonance

Q 60) _____ is the opposite of hyperbole.

- (c) Knight: Brave (d) Buffalo: Milk
- Q 42) Kld: Goat** (b) Calf: Antelope
(a) Lion: Lioness (d) Sheep: Goat
(c) Cattle: Graze
- Q 43) Bee: Swarm** (b) Star: Sky
(a) Team: Cricket (d) Student: Talented
(c) Ship: Fleet
- Q 44) Summer: Hot** (b) Autumn: Poetic
(a) Winter: Cold (d) Epic: Poem
(c) Spring: Long

ANSWER KEYS

S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans	S.no	Ans
1	d	13	d	25	c	37	d
2	a	14	c	26	d	38	a
3	c	15	c	27	b	39	b
4	b	16	b	28	c	40	a
5	d	17	b	29	d	41	b
6	c	18	c	30	c	42	b
7	a	19	b	31	b	43	c
8	a	20	a	32	d	44	a
9	c	21	d	33	b	45	
10	b	22	a	34	c	46	
11	d	23	b	35	a	47	
12	a	24	a	36	b	48	

ACADEMY
Estb - 1990

- Q 14) Gloomy: Cheerful**
 (a) Magnificent: Beautiful
 (b) Voluminous: Size
 (c) Diffident: Confident
 (d) Meticulous: Care
- Q 15) Hair: Bald**
 (a) Wig: Curly (b) Egg: Cooked
 (c) Rain: Arid (d) Sin: Evil
- Q 16) Mentor: Counsel**
 (a) Poet: Criticism
 (b) Bodyguard: Protection
 (c) Plea: Mercy
 (d) Sermon: Conscience
- Q 17) Frown: Displeasure**
 (a) Blush: Pallor (b) Sneer: Contempt
 (c) Smile: Commiseration (d) Snore: Relief
- Q 18) Asylum: Shelter**
 (a) Harbor: Concealment (b) Paradise: Hell
 (c) Stronghold: Defense (d) Hospitable: Miser
- Q 19) Rubber: Elastic**
 (a) Dust: Allergic (b) Diamond: Hard
 (c) Paper: Brittle (d) Metal: Heavy
- Q 20) Law: Citizens**
 (a) Reins: Horse (b) Weapon: Peace
 (c) Democracy: Communist
 (d) Tyranny: Miserable
- Q 21) Industrious: Assiduous**
 (a) Affluent: Impoverished
 (b) Fortuitous: Fortunate
 (c) Mendacious: Beggarly
 (d) Impecunious
- Q 22) Theology: Religion**
 (a) Astronomy: Stars
 (b) Sociology: Individuals
 (c) Politics: Ethics
 (d) Economist: Theory
- Q 23) Chalk: Blackboard**
 (a) Handle: Door (b) Pen: Paper
 (c) Note: Music (d) Window: Wall
- Q 24) Funeral: Somber**
 (a) Celebration: Joyful
 (b) Weeding: Impressive
 (c) Graduation: Mature
 (d) Ceremony: Televised
- Q 25) Explosion: Debris**
 (a) Floor: Water (b) Famine: Food
 (c) Fire: Ashes (d) Disease: Germ
- Q 26) Horns: Bull**
 (a) Hoofs: Horse (b) Wing: Eagle
- (c) Mane: Lion (d) Antlers: Stag
- Q 27) Helmet: Head**
 (a) Pendant: Neck (b) Breast plate: Chest
 (c) Pedal: Foot (d) Knapsack: Back
- Q 28) Surprise: Exclamation**
 (a) Happiness: Grimace (b) Insolence: Bow
 (c) Dismay: Grong (d) Contentment: Mutter
- Q 29) Range: Mountains**
 (a) Novel: Short stories (b) Sea: Rivers
 (c) Atlas: Map (d) String: Beads
- Q 30) Teacher: Classroom**
 (a) Hospital: Medicine (b) Smile: Hatred
 (c) Umpire: Playing ground
 (d) Pain: Fear
- Q 31) Multiply: Divide**
 (a) Enumerate: Count (b) Enter: Leave
 (c) Speak: Communicate (d) Drive: Ride
- Q 32) Scribbling: Writing**
 (a) Pen: Pencil (b) Sound: Vibration
 (c) Walking: Jogging (d) Mumbling: Speaking
- Q 33) Shutter: Talk**
 (a) Worry: Analyze (b) Stumble: Walk
 (c) Walk: Run (d) Hear: Understand
- Q 34) Impartiality: Bias**
 (a) Limitation: Restriction
 (b) Advantage: Agreement
 (c) Disagreement: Concord
 (d) Predicament: Dilemma
- Q 35) Strengthen: Invigorate**
 (a) Stubborn: Willful (b) Cruelty: Mercy
 (c) Shout: Inform (d) Exasperates: Mitigate
- Q 36) Rogue: Knavish**
 (a) Industrious: Naïve (b) Virtuous:
 Experienced
 (c) Ages: Evil (d) Delay: Agony
- Q 37) Dove: Peace**
 (a) Wood: Tree (b) Earth: Green
 (c) Meal: Restaurant (d) Lau real: Success
- Q 38) Coal: Mine**
 (a) Earth: Mineral (b) Mind: Sharp
 (c) Athlete: Run (d) Aero plane: Space
- Q 39) Sickle: Harvest**
 (a) Pen: Might (b) Brush: Point
 (c) Eyes: Pain (d) Teeth: White
- Q 40) Stomach: Digest**
 (a) Heart: Pump (b) Gun: New
 (c) Needle: Broken (d) Football: World cup
- Q 41) Mare: Horse**
 (a) Man: Men (b) Bachelor: Spinster

LESSON NO. 15

ANALOGIES

Analogy is basically vocabulary question. In normal routine vocabulary questions, the examinees are asked either to find the synonyms or to find the antonym of a given word or words. In analogies the candidates are not only required to find out the meaning of the pairs of words but are also demanded to find out the relationship between the pairs of words. Thus, here the candidate has to perform two tasks. One is that they have to find out the meaning of the pairs of the words and the second is that they have to understand the relationship between the pairs of words. An analogy has two parts. The basic part is called the main pair. Then, usually four subpairs of words are given. The pairs of words are separated from each other by colon (:)

For example: HOT: COLD

- (a) Winter: Summer
- (b) Baby: Mother
- (c) High: Tall
- (d) Bee: Swarm

Analysis:

This question demands the ability to understand logical relationships between pairs of words. Vocabulary is the ability to understand the meaning of words is also tested. The main pair has two words. They are the antonyms of each other. The opposite of 'HOT' is 'Cold'. Now if we look at option (c), it is High: Tall. Both of these are synonyms. Option (d) is Bee and Swarm. A group of bees is called swarm. Option (b) is Baby and Mother. A mother is the one who takes care of her child. (a) is Winter: Summer. Winter is the antonym of summer, so option (a) will be the right option.

Lesson No. 13 Analogy

2018

Q 83) Choose the related word for Broom on the analogy of Water: Splash.

- (a) Whisper (b) Gush
- (c) Swish (d) Screech

ANSWER: (c)

Q 84) Choose the related word for Rat on the analogy

of Elephant: Stride.

- (a) Scamper (b) Loiter
- (c) Whimper (d) Gallop

ANSWER: (a)

PRACTICE MCQs

Q 1) Choreography: Dance

- (a) Ceremony: Sermon
- (b) Agenda: Advertisement
- (c) Poetry: Recitation

(d) Plot: Story

Q 2) Biceps: Muscle

- (a) Cobra: Snake (b) Pump: Heart
- (c) Bat: Ball (d) Cup: Mug

Q 3) Defend: Prosecute

- (a) Protect: Serve (b) Allay: Berate
- (c) Fatify: Assail (d) Liberate: Free

Q 4) Study: Learn

- (a) Pervade: Encompass
- (b) Search: Find
- (c) Gather: Win (d) Agree: Keep

Q 5) Lullaby: Song

- (a) Narrative: Volume
- (b) Lecture: Tutor (c) Paragraph: Page
- (d) Diatribe: declaration

Q 6) Spark: Conflagration

- (a) Match: Light
- (b) Oxygen: Combustion
- (c) Drizzle: Downpour
- (d) Sugar: Sweet

Q 7) Meteorology: Weather

- (a) Ornithology: Birds
- (b) Chemistry: Test tube
- (c) Physics: Calculus
- (d) Clouds: Moisture

Q 8) Caterpillar: Butterfly

- (a) Tadpole: Frog (b) Bird: Nest
- (c) Egg: Yolk (d) Puppy: Kitten

Q 9) Hammer: Tool

- (a) Tire: Wheel (b) Nail: Screw
- (c) Wagon: Vehicle (d) Stick: Hit

Q 10) Old: Antique

- (a) Useless: Useful (b) New: Modern
- (c) Cheap: Expensive (d) Wanted: Needed

Q 11) Trick: Gush

- (a) Flow: Stream (b) Listen: Hear
- (c) Soar: Dive (d) Touch: Collide

Q 12) Altruist: Selflessness

- (a) Miser: Stinginess
- (b) Dilettante: Skill
- (c) Demagogue: Passively
- (d) Tyrant: Dignity

Q 13) Water: Spring

- (a) Snow: Mountain (b) Eyes: Makeup
- (c) Water: Spring (d) Lava: Volcano

MM Coaching Academy

LESSON NO. 16 (IDIOMS)

Do unto others as you would have them do unto you	Treat people fairly. Also known as "The Golden Rule"	by itself
Don't count your chickens before they hatch	Don't count on something good happening until it's happened.	by itself
Don't cry over spilt milk	There's no reason to complain about something that can't be fixed	by itself
Don't give up your day job	You're not very good at this	by itself
Don't put all your eggs in one basket	What you're doing is too risky	by itself
Every cloud has a silver lining	Good things come after bad things	by itself
Get a taste of your own medicine	Get treated the way you've been treating others (negative)	as part of a sentence
Give someone the cold shoulder	Ignore someone	as part of a sentence
Go on a wild goose chase	To do something pointless	as part of a sentence
Good things come to those who wait	Be patient	by itself
He has bigger fish to fry	He has bigger things to take care of than what we are talking about now	by itself
He's a chip off the old block	The son is like the father	by itself
Hit the nail on the head	Get something exactly right	by itself
Ignorance is bliss	You're better off not knowing	by itself
It ain't over till the fat lady sings	This isn't over yet	by itself
It takes one to know one	You're just as bad as I am	by itself
It's a piece of cake	It's easy	by itself
It's raining cats and dogs	It's raining hard	by itself
Kill two birds with one stone	Get two things done with a single action	by itself
Let the cat out of the bag	Give away a secret	as part of a sentence

Pull someone's leg	To joke with someone	as part of a sentence
Pull yourself together	Calm down	by itself
So far so good	Things are going well so far	by itself
Speak of the devil	The person we were just talking about showed up!	by itself
That's the last straw	My patience has run out	by itself
The best of both worlds	An ideal situation	as part of a sentence
Time flies when you're having fun	You don't notice how long something lasts when it's fun	by itself
To get bent out of shape	To get upset	as part of a sentence
To make matters worse	Make a problem worse	as part of a sentence
Under the weather	Sick	as part of a sentence
We'll cross that bridge when we come to it	Let's not talk about that problem right now	by itself
Wrap your head around something	Understand something complicated	as part of a sentence
You can say that again	That's true, I agree	by itself
Your guess is as good as mine	I have no idea	by itself
A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush	What you have is worth more than what you might have later	by itself
A penny for your thoughts	Tell me what you're thinking	by itself
A penny saved is a penny earned	Money you save today you can spend later	by itself
A perfect storm	the worst possible situation	as part of a sentence
A picture is worth 1000 words	Better to show than tell	by itself
Actions speak louder than words	Believe what people do and not what they say	by itself
Add insult to injury	To make a bad situation worse	as part of a sentence
Barking up the wrong tree	To be mistaken, to be looking for solutions in the wrong place	as part of a sentence
Birds of a feather flock together	People who are alike are often friends (usually used negatively)	by itself
Bite off more than you can chew	Take on a project that you cannot finish	as part of a sentence
Break the ice	Make people feel more comfortable	as part of a sentence
By the skin of your teeth	Just barely	as part of a sentence
Comparing apples to oranges	Comparing two things that cannot be compared	as part of a sentence
Costs an arm and a leg	Very expensive	as part of a sentence
Do something at the drop of a hat	Do something without having planned beforehand	as part of a sentence

LESSON NO. 16

IDIOMS

A group of words in a fixed order that have a particular meaning that is different from the meaning of each word on its own.

For example: "To break the ice" here each individual word does not give its meaning which is "To hit a block of ice and cut into pieces" but its idiomatic meaning is to speak first at the time of a dead silence.

Idiom	Meaning	Usage
A blessing in disguise	a good thing that seemed bad at first	as part of a sentence
A dime a dozen	Something common	as part of a sentence
Beat around the bush	Avoid saying what you mean, usually because it is uncomfortable	as part of a sentence
Better late than never	Better to arrive late than not to come at all	by itself
Bite the bullet	To get something over with because it is inevitable	as part of a sentence
Break a leg	Good luck	by itself
Call it a day	Stop working on something	as part of a sentence
Cut somebody some slack	Don't be so critical	as part of a sentence
Cutting corners	Doing something poorly in order to save time or money	as part of a sentence
Easy does it	Slow down	by itself
Get out of hand	Get out of control	as part of a sentence
Get something out of your system	Do the thing you've been wanting to do so you can move on	as part of a sentence
Get your act together	Work better or leave	by itself
Give someone the benefit of the doubt	Trust what someone says	as part of a sentence
Go back to the drawing board	Start over	as part of a sentence
Hang in there	Don't give up	by itself
Hit the sack	Go to sleep	as part of a sentence
It's not rocket science	It's not complicated	by itself
Let someone off the hook	To not hold someone responsible for something	as part of a sentence
Make a long story short	Tell something briefly	as part of a sentence
Miss the boat	It's too late	as part of a sentence
No pain, no gain	You have to work for what you want	by itself
On the ball	Doing a good job	as part of a sentence

IDIOMS

2018

Q 85) 'Enlarge upon' means:

- (a) Explain in more detail
- (b) To make taller
- (c) To become large
- (d) To measure

ANSWER: (a)

Q 86) 'To the letter' means:

- (a) Cursory
- (b) Enveloping a letter
- (c) Precisely
- (d) Reporting a problem

ANSWER: (c)

2017

Q 87) 'To have an old head on young shoulders' means

- (a) To be wiser than one's age
- (b) To be young but appear old
- (c) To have low IQ
- (d) To be old but appear young

ANSWER: (a)

2013

Q 88) The local inns are bursting at the seams and may not be able to accommodate anymore.
The underlined phrase means:

- (a) Unhygienic
- (b) Overcrowded
- (c) Empty
- (d) Shutting down

ANSWER: (b)

Q 89) 'Be poles apart' means:

- (a) Either of the two poles
- (b) Have nothing in common
- (c) Leading position in a race
- (d) Affect somebody greatly

HINT: Being entirely different from each other.

ANSWER: (b)

2014

Q 90) 'Money grubbing' implies:

- (a) Money saving
- (b) Money making
- (c) Money hunting
- (d) Money spending

ANSWER: (c)

Q 91) 'Get into a soup' implies:

- (a) Face a predicament
- (b) Play a game of cards
- (c) Swallow a fly in a soup
- (d) Go for hot spicy soup

ANSWER: (a)

Q 92) 'Break the ice' implies:

- (a) Walk on ice sheet
- (b) Swallow ice cubes
- (c) Chisel an ice-block
- (d) To make a beginning

ANSWER: (d)

Q 93) 'GET HOLD OF ONESELF' implies:

- (a) To start running
- (b) To catch a thief
- (c) To become clam
- (d) To feel exhausted

ANSWER: (c)

Q 94) 'CRANKY SPOUSE' implies:

- (a) A carefully selected loving partner of life.
- (b) Fussy and bad-tempered wife or husband.
- (c) Money squandering younger second wife
- (d) A device fitted behind the rear seat of a car

ANSWER: (b)

Q 95) 'BREAK THE ICE' implies:

- (a) Walk on ice-sheet
- (b) Swallow ice-cubes
- (c) Chisel an ice-block
- (d) To make a beginning

ANSWER: (d)

SPECIAL THANKS:
**MR. TOUSEEF (MDCAT BY
FUTURE DOCTORS)**

(WWW.TALEEM360.COM)